

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM 8-K**

**CURRENT REPORT  
Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d)  
of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

Date of report (Date of earliest event reported): February 25, 2021

**MCAP Acquisition Corporation**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware  
(State or other jurisdiction  
of incorporation)

001-40116  
(Commission  
File Number)

85-3978415  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

311 South Wacker Drive, Suite 6400  
Chicago, Illinois  
(Address of principal executive offices)

60606  
(Zip Code)

(312) 258-8300  
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Not Applicable  
(Former name or former address, if changed since last report)

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions:

- Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)
- Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)
- Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b))
- Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c))

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
Units, each consisting of one share of Class A Common Stock and one-third of one Warrant Class A Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share	MACQU	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC
Warrants, each whole warrant exercisable for one share of Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50	MACQW	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (§230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (§240.12b-2 of this chapter).

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

**Item 1.01. Entry into a Material Definitive Agreement.**

On February 25, 2021, the registration statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-252607) relating to the initial public offering (the “IPO”) of MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the “Company”) was declared effective by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Company subsequently filed, on February 25, 2021, a registration statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-253556) pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), which was effective immediately upon filing (collectively, the “Registration Statement”).

On March 2, 2021, the Company consummated the IPO of 31,625,000 units (“Units”), which included the full exercise of the underwriters’ over-allotment option. Each Unit consists of one share of Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“Class A Common Stock”), and one-third of one redeemable warrant (“Warrant”), each whole Warrant entitling the holder thereof to purchase one share of Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment. The Units were sold at an offering price of \$10.00 per Unit, generating gross proceeds to the Company of \$316,250,000.

In connection with the IPO, the Company entered into the following agreements, forms of which were previously filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement:

- An Underwriting Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and Cowen and Company, LLC, as representative of the underwriters, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 1.1 hereto and incorporated herein by reference;
- A Warrant Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“Continental”), as warrant agent, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 4.1 hereto and incorporated herein by reference;
- A Letter Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, among the Company, MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the “Sponsor”) and each of the executive officers and directors of the Company, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 10.1 hereto and incorporated herein by reference;
- An Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and Continental, as trustee, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 10.2 hereto and incorporated herein by reference;
- A Registration Rights Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, among the Company, the Sponsor and certain security holders, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 10.3 hereto and incorporated herein by reference;
- A Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and the Sponsor, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 10.4 hereto and incorporated herein by reference; and
- Indemnity Agreements, each dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and each of the officers and directors of the Company, the form of which is attached as Exhibit 10.5 hereto and incorporated herein by reference.

**Item 3.02. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities.**

On March 2, 2021, simultaneously with the consummation of the IPO, the Company consummated the private placement of an aggregate of 5,983,333 warrants (the “Private Placement Warrants”) to the Sponsor at a price of \$1.50 per Private Placement Warrant, generating total gross proceeds of \$8,975,000 (the “Private Placement”). No underwriting discounts or commissions were paid with respect to the Private Placement. The Private Placement was conducted as a non-public transaction and, as a transaction by an issuer not involving a public offering, is exempt from registration under the Securities Act in reliance upon Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act. The Private Placement Warrants are identical to the Warrants, except that (a) the Private Placement Warrants will not be transferable, assignable or salable until 30 days after the consummation of the Company’s initial business combination except to permitted transferees, and (b) the Private Placement Warrants, so long as they are held by the Sponsor or its permitted transferees, (i) will not be redeemable by the Company, (ii) may be exercised by the holders on a cashless basis and (iii) will be entitled to registration rights.

---

**Item 5.02. Departure of Directors or Certain Officers; Election of Directors; Appointment of Certain Officers; Compensatory Arrangements of Certain Officers.**

Effective as of February 25, 2021, the following individuals were appointed to the board of directors of the Company: Thomas J. Allison, John C. Chrystal and Roger Schoenfeld. Additional information regarding, among other things, each individual's background, board committee membership and compensatory arrangements is contained in the Registration Statement and is incorporated herein by reference.

**Item 5.03. Amendments to Certificate of Incorporation or Bylaws; Change in Fiscal Year.**

On February 25, 2021, the Company filed its amended and restated certificate of incorporation (the "Certificate of Incorporation") with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, which was effective the same day. Among other things, the Certificate of Incorporation authorizes the issuance of (a) up to 220,000,000 shares of common stock, including (i) 200,000,000 shares of Class A Common Stock and (ii) 20,000,000 shares of Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, and (b) up to 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. The terms of the Certificate of Incorporation are set forth in the Registration Statement and are incorporated herein by reference. The foregoing description of the Certificate of Incorporation is qualified in its entirety by reference to the full text of the Certificate of Incorporation, which is attached as Exhibit 3.1 hereto and is incorporated herein by reference.

**Item 8.01. Other Events.**

A total of \$316,250,000 of the net proceeds from the IPO and the Private Placement was placed in a trust account established for the benefit of the Company's public stockholders (the "Trust Account"), with Continental acting as trustee. Except with respect to interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account that may be released to the Company to pay its tax obligations and up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses, none of the funds held in the Trust Account will be released from the Trust Account until the earliest of (i) the completion of the Company's initial business combination, (ii) the redemption of any shares of Class A Common Stock included in the Units sold in the IPO ("public shares") properly tendered in connection with a stockholder vote to amend the Certificate of Incorporation (A) to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to provide holders of the public shares the right to have their shares redeemed or to redeem 100% of the public shares if the Company does not complete its initial business combination within 24 months from the closing of the IPO or (B) with respect to any other provision relating to the rights of holders of the public shares or the Company's pre-initial business combination activity, and (iii) the redemption of the public shares if the Company does not complete an initial business combination within 24 months from the closing of the IPO, subject to applicable law.

On February 25, 2021, the Company issued a press release announcing the pricing of the IPO, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 99.1 hereto and incorporated herein by reference.

On March 2, 2021, the Company issued a press release announcing the closing of the IPO, a copy of which is attached as Exhibit 99.2 hereto and incorporated herein by reference.

---

**Item 9.01. Financial Statements and Exhibits.**

(d) Exhibits.

<b>Exhibit No.</b>	<b>Description</b>
<a href="#">1.1</a>	<a href="#">Underwriting Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and Cowen and Company, LLC.</a>
<a href="#">3.1</a>	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company.</a>
<a href="#">4.1</a>	<a href="#">Warrant Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company.</a>
<a href="#">10.1</a>	<a href="#">Letter Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, among the Company, MCAP Acquisition, LLC and each of the executive officers and directors of the Company.</a>
<a href="#">10.2</a>	<a href="#">Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company.</a>
<a href="#">10.3</a>	<a href="#">Registration Rights Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, among the Company, MCAP Acquisition, LLC and certain securityholders.</a>
<a href="#">10.4</a>	<a href="#">Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement, dated February 25, 2021, between the Company and MCAP Acquisition, LLC.</a>
<a href="#">10.5</a>	<a href="#">Form of Indemnity Agreement.(1)</a>
<a href="#">99.1</a>	<a href="#">Press release, dated February 25, 2021.</a>
<a href="#">99.2</a>	<a href="#">Press release, dated March 2, 2021.</a>

(1) Incorporated by reference to an exhibit to the Registrant's Amendment No. 1 to Form S-1 (File No. 333-252607), filed with the SEC on February 12, 2021.

---

**SIGNATURE**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Theodore L. Koenig

Name: Theodore L. Koenig

Title: Chief Executive Officer

Date: March 2, 2021

---

MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION

27,500,000 Units

Underwriting Agreement

February 25, 2021

Cowen and Company, LLC  
As Representative of the several Underwriters listed in Schedule 1 hereto

c/o Cowen and Company, LLC  
599 Lexington Avenue  
New York, New York 10022

Ladies and Gentlemen:

MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), proposes to issue and sell to the several underwriters listed in Schedule 1 hereto (collectively, the "Underwriters"), for whom you are acting as representative (the "Representative"), an aggregate of 27,500,000 units of the Company (the "Underwritten Units") and, at the option of the Underwriters, up to an additional 4,125,000 units of the Company (the "Option Units"). The Underwritten Units and the Option Units are herein referred to as the "Units."

Each Unit consists of one share of the Company's Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "Common Stock"), and one-third of one redeemable warrant, where each whole warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock (the "Warrants"). The shares of Common Stock and the Warrants included in the Units will not trade separately until the 52nd day following the date of the Prospectus (as defined below) (or if such date is not a business day (as defined below), the following business day) (unless the Representative informs the Company of its decision to allow earlier separate trading), subject to (a) the Company's preparation of an audited balance sheet reflecting the receipt by the Company of the proceeds of the Offering (as defined below), (b) the filing of such audited balance sheet with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") on a Current Report on Form 8-K or similar form by the Company that includes such audited balance sheet and (c) the Company having issued a press release announcing when such separate trading will begin. No fractional Warrants will be issued upon separation of the Units, and only whole Warrants will trade. Each whole Warrant entitles its holder, upon exercise, to purchase one share of Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share during the period commencing on the later of thirty days after the completion of the Company's initial Business Combination (as defined below) and twelve months from the date of the consummation of the Offering, and terminating on the five-year anniversary of the date of the completion of such initial Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or Liquidation (as defined below); provided, however, that pursuant to the Warrant Agreement (as defined below), a fractional Warrant may not be exercised, so that only a whole Warrant may be exercised at any given time by a holder thereof. As used herein, the term "Business Combination" (as described more fully in the Prospectus) shall mean a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses involving the Company.

---

The Company has entered into an Investment Management Trust Agreement, effective as of the date hereof (the “Trust Agreement”), with Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“CST”), as trustee (the “Trustee”), in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 10.3 to the Registration Statement (as defined below), pursuant to which proceeds from the sale of the Private Placement Warrants (as defined below) and proceeds from the Offering will be deposited and held in a trust account (the “Trust Account”) for the benefit of the Company, the Underwriters and the Public Stockholders (as defined below).

The Company has entered into a Warrant Agreement, effective as of the date hereof (the “Warrant Agreement”), with respect to the Warrants and the Private Placement Warrants with CST, as warrant agent, in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 4.4 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which CST will act as warrant agent in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, redemption, and exercise of the Warrants and the Private Placement Warrants.

Effective as of December 21, 2020, the Company entered into a Securities Subscription Agreement (the “Sponsor Purchase Agreement”) with MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the “Sponsor”), in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 10.5 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Sponsor purchased 7,187,500 shares of the Company’s Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “Founder Shares”), for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000. On February 25, 2021, the Company effected a stock dividend of .10 of a Founder Share for each outstanding Founder Share, resulting in an aggregate of 7,906,250 Founder Shares outstanding. Depending on the extent to which the Underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised, up to an aggregate of 1,031,250 Founder Shares are subject to forfeiture. The Founder Shares are substantially similar to the shares of Common Stock included in the Units, except as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package (as defined below) and the Prospectus.

Effective as of December 21, 2020, the Company issued a Promissory Note (the “Founder Promissory Note”) in favor of the Sponsor, in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 10.2 to the Registration Statement, under which the Company may borrow up to an aggregate principal amount of \$300,000. The Founder Promissory Note is unsecured and non-interest-bearing.

Effective as of the date hereof, the Company has entered into a Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement (the “Warrant Purchase Agreement”) with the Sponsor, in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 10.6 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Sponsor agreed to purchase an aggregate of 5,433,333 warrants (or 5,983,333 warrants if the over-allotment option is exercised in full), each such warrant entitling its holder, upon exercise, to purchase one share of Common Stock (the “Private Placement Warrants”), for \$1.50 per Private Placement Warrant. The Private Placement Warrants are substantially similar to the Warrants included in the Units, except as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

The Company has entered into a Registration Rights Agreement, effective as of the date hereof (the “Registration Rights Agreement”), with the Sponsor and the other parties thereto, in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 10.4 to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Company has granted certain registration rights in respect of the Private Placement Warrants and the shares of Common Stock underlying the Private Placement Warrants, the Founder Shares and certain warrants (which will be substantially similar to the Private Placement Warrants), if any, that may be issued upon the conversion of working capital loans and the shares of Common Stock underlying such warrants, if any.

The Company has caused to be duly executed and delivered a letter agreement, effective as of the date hereof (the “Insider Letter” and, together with this Agreement (as defined below), the Trust Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Sponsor Purchase Agreement, the Founder Promissory Note, the Warrant Purchase Agreement and the Registration Rights Agreement, the “Transaction Documents”), by the Company on the one hand and the Sponsor and each of the Company’s officers, directors and director nominees on the other hand, in each case in substantially the form filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Registration Statement.

The Company hereby confirms its agreement with the several Underwriters concerning the purchase and sale of the Units, as follows:

1. Registration Statement. The Company has prepared and filed with the Commission under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder (collectively, the “Securities Act”), a registration statement (File No. 333-252607), including a prospectus, relating to the Units and the Warrants and shares of Common Stock included therein. Such registration statement, as amended at the time it became effective, including the information, if any, deemed pursuant to Rule 430A, 430B or 430C under the Securities Act to be part of the registration statement at the time of its effectiveness (“Rule 430 Information”), is referred to herein as the “Registration Statement”; and as used herein, the term “Preliminary Prospectus” means each prospectus included in such registration statement (and any amendments thereto) before effectiveness, any prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(a) under the Securities Act and the prospectus included in the Registration Statement at the time of its effectiveness that omits Rule 430 Information, and the term “Prospectus” means the prospectus in the form first used (or made available upon request of purchasers pursuant to Rule 173 under the Securities Act) in connection with confirmation of sales of the Units. If the Company has filed an abbreviated registration statement pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act (the “Rule 462 Registration Statement”), then any reference herein to the term “Registration Statement” shall be deemed to include such Rule 462 Registration Statement.

At or prior to the Applicable Time (as defined below), the Company had prepared the following information (collectively with the pricing information set forth on Annex A, the “Pricing Disclosure Package”): a Preliminary Prospectus dated February 22, 2021.

“Applicable Time” means 4:30 P.M., New York City time, on February 25, 2021.

2. Purchase of the Units.

(a) The Company agrees to issue and sell the Underwritten Units to the several Underwriters as provided in this underwriting agreement (this “Agreement”), and each Underwriter, on the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements set forth herein and subject to the conditions set forth herein, agrees, severally and not jointly, to purchase at a price per Unit of \$9.80 (the “Purchase Price”) from the Company the respective number of Underwritten Units set forth opposite such Underwriter’s name in Schedule 1 hereto.

(b) In addition, the Company agrees to issue and sell the Option Units to the several Underwriters as provided in this Agreement, and the Underwriters, on the basis of the representations, warranties and agreements set forth herein and subject to the conditions set forth herein, shall have the option to purchase, severally and not jointly, from the Company the Option Units at a price per Unit of \$9.80 less an amount per unit equal to any dividends or distributions declared by the Company and payable on the Underwritten Units but not payable on the Option Units.

If any Option Units are to be purchased, the number of Option Units to be purchased by each Underwriter shall be the number of Option Units which bears the same ratio to the aggregate number of Option Units being purchased as the number of Underwritten Units set forth opposite the name of such Underwriter in Schedule 1 hereto (or such number increased as set forth in Section 10 hereof) bears to the aggregate number of Underwritten Units being purchased from the Company by the several Underwriters, subject, however, to such adjustments to eliminate any fractional Units as the Representative in its sole discretion shall make.



The Underwriters may exercise the option to purchase Option Units at any time in whole, or from time to time in part, on or before the forty-fifth day following the date of the Prospectus, by written notice from the Representative to the Company. Such notice shall set forth the aggregate number of Option Units as to which the option is being exercised and the date and time when the Option Units are to be delivered and paid for, which may be the same date and time as the Closing Date (as defined below) but shall not be earlier than the Closing Date nor later than the tenth full business day after the date of such notice (unless such time and date are postponed in accordance with the provisions of Section 10 hereof). Any such notice shall be given at least one business day prior to the date and time of delivery specified therein.

(c) The Company understands that the Underwriters intend to make a public offering of the Units (the “Offering”), and initially to offer the Units on the terms set forth in the Pricing Disclosure Package. The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Underwriters may offer and sell Units to or through any affiliate of an Underwriter.

(d) Payment for the Units shall be made by wire transfer in immediately available funds to the account specified by the Company to the Representative in the case of the Underwritten Units, at the offices of Greenberg Traurig, LLP at 1750 Tysons Boulevard, Suite 1000, McLean, VA, 22102 at 10:00 A.M. New York City time on March 2, 2021, or at such other time or place on the same or such other date, not later than the fifth business day thereafter, as the Representative and the Company may agree upon in writing or, in the case of the Option Units, on the date and at the time and place specified by the Representative in the written notice of the Underwriters’ election to purchase such Option Units. The Company shall not be obligated to sell or deliver any of the Underwritten Units, except upon tender of payment by the Representative for all Underwritten Units. The time and date of such payment for the Underwritten Units is referred to herein as the “Closing Date,” and each time and date for such payment for Option Units, if other than the Closing Date, is herein referred to as an “Additional Closing Date.”

Payment for the Units to be purchased on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, shall be made against delivery to the Representative for the respective accounts of the several Underwriters of the Units to be purchased on such date in definitive or book-entry form registered in such names and in such denominations as the Representative shall request in writing not later than two full business days prior to the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, with any transfer taxes payable in connection with the sale of such Units duly paid by the Company. Delivery of the Units shall be made through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company unless the Representative shall otherwise instruct.

(e) In addition to the discount from the public offering price represented by the Purchase Price, the Company hereby agrees to pay to the Underwriters a deferred discount of \$0.350 per Unit (including both Underwritten Units and Option Units) purchased hereunder (the “Deferred Discount”). The Deferred Discount will be paid directly to the Representative, on behalf of the Underwriters, by the Trustee from amounts on deposit in the Trust Account (without accrued interest) by wire transfer payable in same-day funds if and when the Company consummates an initial Business Combination. The Underwriters hereby agree that if no Business Combination is consummated within the time period provided in the Company’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as such time period may be extended, and the funds held under the Trust Agreement are distributed to the holders of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold pursuant to this Agreement (the “Public Stockholders”), (i) the Underwriters will forfeit any rights or claims to the Deferred Discount and (ii) the Trustee is authorized to distribute the Deferred Discount to the Public Stockholders on a pro rata basis.

(f) The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Representative and the other Underwriters are acting solely in the capacity of an arm's length contractual counterparty to the Company with respect to the Offering contemplated hereby (including in connection with determining the terms of the Offering) and not as a financial advisor or a fiduciary to, or an agent of, the Company or any other person. Additionally, neither the Representative nor any other Underwriter is advising the Company or any other person as to any legal, tax, investment, accounting or regulatory matters in any jurisdiction. The Company shall consult with its own advisors concerning such matters and shall be responsible for making its own independent investigation and appraisal of the transactions contemplated hereby, and neither the Representative nor the other Underwriters shall have any responsibility or liability to the Company with respect thereto. Any review by the Representative and the other Underwriters of the Company, the transactions contemplated hereby or other matters relating to such transactions will be performed solely for the benefit of the Underwriters and shall not be on behalf of the Company.

3. Representations and Warranties of the Company. The Company represents and warrants to each Underwriter that:

(a) *Preliminary Prospectus.* No order preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus has been issued by the Commission, and each Preliminary Prospectus included in the Pricing Disclosure Package, at the time of filing thereof, complied in all material respects with the Securities Act, and no Preliminary Prospectus, at the time of filing thereof, contained any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided that the Company makes no representation or warranty with respect to any statements or omissions made in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to any Underwriter furnished to the Company in writing by such Underwriter through the Representative expressly for use in any Preliminary Prospectus, it being understood and agreed that the only such information furnished by any Underwriter consists of the information described as such in Section 7(b) hereof.

(b) *Pricing Disclosure Package.* The Pricing Disclosure Package as of the Applicable Time did not, and as of the Closing Date and as of the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, will not, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided that the Company makes no representation or warranty with respect to any statements or omissions made in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to any Underwriter furnished to the Company in writing by such Underwriter through the Representative expressly for use in such Pricing Disclosure Package, it being understood and agreed that the only such information furnished by any Underwriter consists of the information described as such in Section 7(b) hereof. No statement of material fact included in the Prospectus has been omitted from the Pricing Disclosure Package and no statement of material fact included in the Pricing Disclosure Package that is required to be included in the Prospectus has been omitted therefrom.

(c) *Issuer Free Writing Prospectus.* Other than the Registration Statement, the Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, the Company (including its agents and representatives, other than the Underwriters in their capacity as such) has not prepared, made, used, authorized, approved or referred to and will not prepare, make, use, authorize, approve or refer to any "written communication" (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) that constitutes an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy the Units other than any document not constituting a prospectus pursuant to Section 2(a)(10)(a) of the Securities Act or Rule 134 under the Securities Act.

(d) *Form 8-A.* The Company has filed with the Commission a Form 8-A (file number 001-40116) providing for the registration under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), of the Units, the Common Stock and the Warrants, which registration is currently effective on the date hereof. The Units and the shares of Common Stock and the Warrants included as part of the Units have been authorized for listing, subject to official notice of issuance and evidence of satisfactory distribution, on the Nasdaq Capital Market (the “Exchange”), and the Company knows of no reason or set of facts that is likely to adversely affect such authorization.

(e) *Emerging Growth Company.* From the time of the initial confidential submission of the Registration Statement to the Commission (or, if earlier, the first date on which the Company engaged directly or through any person authorized to act on its behalf in any Testing-the-Waters Communication) through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act (an “Emerging Growth Company”). “Testing-the-Waters Communication” means any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the Securities Act or Rule 163B under the Securities Act.

(f) *Testing-the-Waters Materials.* The Company (i) has not alone engaged in any Testing-the-Waters Communications other than Testing-the-Waters Communications with the consent of the Representative with entities that are qualified institutional buyers within the meaning of Rule 144A under the Securities Act or institutions that are accredited investors within the meaning of Rule 501 under the Securities Act and (ii) has not authorized anyone other than the Representative to engage in Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company reconfirms that the Representative has been authorized to act on its behalf in undertaking Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company has not distributed or approved for distribution any Written Testing-the-Waters Communications other than those listed on Annex B hereto. “Written Testing-the-Waters Communication” means any Testing-the-Waters Communication that is a written communication within the meaning of Rule 405 under the Securities Act. Any individual Written Testing-the-Waters Communication does not conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement or the Pricing Disclosure Package, complied in all material respects with the Securities Act, and when taken together with the Pricing Disclosure Package as of the Applicable Time, did not, and as of the Closing Date and as of the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, will not, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(g) *Registration Statement and Prospectus.* The Registration Statement has been declared effective by the Commission. No order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement has been issued by the Commission, and no proceeding for that purpose or pursuant to Section 8A of the Securities Act against the Company or related to the Offering has been initiated or threatened by the Commission; as of the applicable effective date of the Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto, the Registration Statement and any such post-effective amendment complied and will comply in all material respects with the Securities Act, and did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein not misleading; and as of the date of the Prospectus and any amendment or supplement thereto and as of the Closing Date and as of the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, the Prospectus will comply in all material respects with the Securities Act and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; provided that the Company makes no representation or warranty with respect to any statements or omissions made in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to any Underwriter furnished to the Company in writing by such Underwriter through the Representative expressly for use in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and any amendment or supplement thereto, it being understood and agreed that the only such information furnished by any Underwriter consists of the information described as such in Section 7(b) hereof.

(h) *Financial Statements.* The financial statements (including the related notes thereto) of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus comply in all material respects with the applicable requirements of the Securities Act and present fairly the financial position of the Company as of the dates indicated and the results of their operations and the changes in their cash flows for the periods specified; such financial statements have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (“GAAP”) in the United States applied on a consistent basis throughout the periods covered thereby, and any supporting schedules included in the Registration Statement present fairly the information required to be stated therein; and the other financial information included in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus has been derived from the accounting records of the Company and presents fairly the information shown thereby; all disclosures included in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus regarding “non-GAAP financial measures” (as such term is defined by the rules and regulations of Commission), if any, comply with Regulation G of the Exchange Act and Item 10 of Regulation S-K of the Securities Act, to the extent applicable.

(i) *No Material Adverse Change.* Since the date of the most recent financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, (i) there has not been any change in the capital stock, short-term debt or long-term debt of the Company, or any dividend or distribution of any kind declared, set aside for payment, paid or made by the Company on any class of capital stock, or any material adverse change, or any development involving a prospective material adverse change, in or affecting the business, properties, management, financial position, stockholders’ equity, results of operations or prospects of the Company; (ii) the Company has not entered into any transaction or agreement (whether or not in the ordinary course of business) that is material to the Company or incurred any liability or obligation, direct or contingent, that is material to the Company; and (iii) the Company has not sustained any loss or interference with its business that is material to the Company and that is either from fire, explosion, flood or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, or from any labor disturbance or dispute or any action, order or decree of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, except in each case as otherwise disclosed in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(j) *Organization and Good Standing.* The Company has been duly organized and is validly existing and in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of organization, is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing in each jurisdiction in which its ownership or lease of property or the conduct of its business requires such qualification, and has all power and authority necessary to own or hold its properties and to conduct the business in which it is engaged, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing or have such power or authority would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, management, financial position, stockholders’ equity, results of operations or prospects of the Company or on the performance by the Company of its obligations under the Transaction Documents (a “Material Adverse Effect”).

(k) *Capitalization.* The Company has an authorized capitalization as set forth in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the heading “Capitalization”; all the outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company have been duly and validly authorized and issued and are fully paid and non-assessable and are not subject to any pre-emptive or similar rights; except as described in or expressly contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there are no outstanding rights (including, without limitation, pre-emptive rights), warrants or options to acquire, or instruments convertible into or exchangeable for, any shares of capital stock or other equity interest in the Company or any contract, commitment, agreement, understanding or arrangement of any kind relating to the issuance of any capital stock of the Company, any such convertible or exchangeable securities or any such rights, warrants or options; the capital stock of the Company conforms in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. The offers and sales of the outstanding securities of the Company were at all relevant times either registered under the Securities Act, the applicable state securities and blue sky laws or, based in part on the representations and warranties of the purchasers of such securities, exempt from such registration requirements.

(l) *Due Authorization.* The Company has full right, power and authority to execute and deliver this Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents and to perform its obligations hereunder and thereunder; and all action required to be taken for the due and proper authorization, execution and delivery by it of this Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents and the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby has been duly and validly taken.

(m) *The Underwriting Agreement.* This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company.

(n) *The Units.* The Units to be issued and sold by the Company hereunder have been duly and validly authorized by the Company and, when issued and delivered and paid for as provided herein, will be duly and validly issued, will be free of statutory and contractual preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal or similar rights, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus; and the issuance of the Units is not subject to any preemptive or similar rights.

(o) *The Unit Shares.* The shares of Common Stock included in the Units have been duly and validly authorized by the Company and, when issued and delivered against payment for the Units by the Underwriters pursuant to this Agreement, will be duly and validly issued and delivered, will be fully paid and nonassessable, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(p) *The Founder Shares.* The Founder Shares have been duly authorized, validly issued and fully paid by the Company and are nonassessable.

(q) *The Unit Warrants.* The Warrants included in the Units to be issued and sold by the Company hereunder have been duly authorized by the Company and, when issued and delivered in the manner set forth in the Warrant Agreement against payment for the Units by the Underwriters pursuant to this Agreement, will be duly and validly issued and delivered, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(r) *The Private Placement Warrants.* The Private Placement Warrants to be issued and sold by the Company under the Warrant Purchase Agreement have been duly authorized by the Company and, when issued and delivered in the manner set forth in the Warrant Agreement against payment therefor by the Sponsor pursuant to the Warrant Purchase Agreement, will be duly and validly issued and delivered, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(s) *The Warrant Shares.* The shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants included in the Units and the Private Placement Warrants have been duly authorized by the Company and, when issued and delivered against payment therefor pursuant to the Warrants and the Private Placement Warrants, as applicable, and the Warrant Agreement, will be duly and validly issued and delivered, will be fully paid and nonassessable; and such shares of Common Stock have been duly authorized by the Company and validly reserved for issuance. The holders of such shares of Common Stock will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; such shares of Common Stock are not, and at the time such shares are issued will not be, subject to any preemptive or other similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of such shares of Common Stock (other than such delivery at the time of issuance) has been duly and validly taken.

(t) *The Trust Agreement.* The Trust Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(u) *The Warrant Agreement.* The Warrant Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(v) *The Sponsor Purchase Agreement.* The Sponsor Purchase Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the Sponsor, and constitutes valid and legally binding obligations of the Company and the Sponsors enforceable against the Company and the Sponsor in accordance with their terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(w) *The Founder Promissory Note.* The Founder Promissory Note has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(x) *The Warrant Purchase Agreement.* The Warrant Purchase Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the Sponsor, and constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company and the Sponsor, enforceable against the Company and the Sponsor in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(y) *The Registration Rights Agreement.* The Registration Rights Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(z) *The Insider Letter.* The Insider Letter has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the Sponsor and, to the Company's knowledge, duly executed and delivered by each officer, director and director nominee of the Company and constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company and the Sponsor and, to the Company's knowledge, a valid and legally binding obligation of each officer, director and director nominee of the Company, enforceable in accordance with its terms against the Company and the Sponsor and, to the Company's knowledge, each officer, director and director nominee of the Company, except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by equitable principles relating to enforceability, and will conform to the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(aa) *[Reserved]*

(bb) *[Reserved]*

(cc) *Descriptions of the Transaction Documents.* Each Transaction Document conforms in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(dd) *No Violation or Default.* The Company is not (i) in violation of any provision in its charter or by-laws or similar organizational documents; (ii) in default, and no event has occurred that, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default, in the due performance or observance of any term, covenant or condition contained in any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which the Company is bound or to which any property or asset of the Company is subject; or (iii) in violation of any law or statute or any judgment, order, rule or regulation of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, except, in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii) above, for any such default or violation that would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(ee) *No Conflicts.* The execution, delivery and performance by the Company of each of the Transaction Documents, the issuance and sale of the Units and the consummation of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents or the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus will not (i) conflict with or result in a breach or violation of any of the terms or provisions of, or constitute a default under, result in the termination, modification or acceleration of, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property, right or asset of the Company pursuant to, any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which the Company is bound or to which any property, right or asset of the Company is subject, (ii) result in any violation of the provisions of the charter or by-laws or similar organizational documents of the Company or (iii) result in the violation of any law or statute or any judgment, order, rule or regulation of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, except, in the case of clauses (i) and (iii) above, for any such conflict, breach, violation, default, lien, charge or encumbrance that would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(ff) *No Consents Required.* No consent, approval, authorization, order, registration or qualification of or with any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority is required for the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of each of the Transaction Documents, the issuance and sale of the Units and the consummation of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, except for the registration of the Units and the shares of Common Stock and the Warrants included in the Units under the Securities Act and such consents, approvals, authorizations, orders and registrations or qualifications as may be required by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (“FINRA”) and under applicable state securities laws in connection with the purchase and distribution of the Units by the Underwriters.

(gg) *Legal Proceedings.* There are no legal, governmental or regulatory investigations, actions, demands, claims, suits, arbitrations, inquiries or proceedings (“Actions”) pending to which the Company is or may be a party or to which any property of the Company is or may be the subject that, individually or in the aggregate, if determined adversely to the Company, could reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; no such Actions are threatened or, to the knowledge of the Company, contemplated by any governmental or regulatory authority or threatened by others; and (i) there are no current or pending Actions that are required under the Securities Act to be described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package or the Prospectus that are not so described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and (ii) there are no statutes, regulations or contracts or other documents that are required under the Securities Act to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement or described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package or the Prospectus that are not so filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement or described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(hh) *Independent Accountants.* Marcum LLP, who have certified certain financial statements of the Company, is an independent registered public accounting firm with respect to the Company within the applicable rules and regulations adopted by the Commission and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) and as required by the Securities Act.

(ii) *Certain Disclosures.* There is no franchise, contract or other document of a character required to be described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus, or to be filed as an exhibit thereto, which is not described or filed as required (and the Pricing Disclosure Package contains in all material respects the same description of the foregoing matters contained in the Prospectus); and the statements in the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the headings “Principal Stockholders,” “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions,” “Description of Securities,” “Underwriting” and “United States Federal Income Tax Considerations” insofar as such statements summarize legal matters, agreements, documents or proceedings discussed therein, are in all material respects accurate and fair summaries of such legal matters, agreements, documents or proceedings. There are no business relationships or related party transactions involving the Company or any other person required by the Securities Act to be described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus that have not been described as required.

(jj) *Investment Company Act.* The Company is not and, after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Units and the application of the proceeds thereof as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, will not be required to register as an “investment company” or an entity “controlled” by an “investment company” within the meaning of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder (collectively, the “Investment Company Act”).



(kk) *Company Taxes.* The Company has paid all federal, state, local and foreign taxes and filed all tax returns required to be paid or filed through the date hereof; and except as otherwise disclosed in each of the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there is no tax deficiency that has been, or could reasonably be expected to be, asserted against the Company or any of its properties or assets.

(ll) *Licenses and Permits.* The Company possesses all licenses, sub-licenses, certificates, permits and other authorizations issued by, and has made all declarations and filings with, the appropriate federal, state, local or foreign governmental or regulatory authorities that are necessary for the ownership or lease of its properties or the conduct of its business as described in each of the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, except where the failure to possess or make the same would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; and except as described in each of the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company has not received notice of any revocation or modification of any such license, sub-license, certificate, permit or authorization or has any reason to believe that any such license, sub-license, certificate, permit or authorization will not be renewed in the ordinary course.

(mm) *Disclosure Controls.* The Company maintains an effective system of “disclosure controls and procedures” (as defined in Rule 13a-15(e) of the Exchange Act) that complies with the requirements of the Exchange Act to the extent required by Rule 13a-15(e) of the Exchange Act.

(nn) *Cybersecurity; Data Protection.* The Company’s information technology assets and equipment, computers, systems, networks, hardware, software, websites, applications, and databases (collectively, “IT Systems”) are adequate for, and operate and perform in all material respects as required in connection with the operation of the business of the Company as currently conducted, free and clear of all material bugs, errors, defects, Trojan horses, time bombs, malware and other corruptants. The Company has implemented and maintained commercially reasonable controls, policies, procedures, and safeguards to maintain and protect its material confidential information and the integrity, continuous operation, redundancy and security of all IT Systems and data (including all personal, personally identifiable, sensitive, confidential or regulated data (“Personal Data”)) used in connection with its business, and there have been no breaches, violations, outages or unauthorized uses of or accesses to same, except for those that have been remedied without material cost or liability or the duty to notify any other person, nor any incidents under internal review or investigations relating to the same. The Company is presently in material compliance with all applicable laws or statutes and all judgments, orders, rules and regulations of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, internal policies and contractual obligations relating to the privacy and security of IT Systems and Personal Data and to the protection of such IT Systems and Personal Data from unauthorized use, access, misappropriation or modification, except where the failure to be in compliance would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(oo) *No Unlawful Payments.* Neither the Company nor any director, director nominees, officer or employee of the Company nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any agent, affiliate, representative or other person associated with or acting on behalf of the Company has (i) used any corporate funds for any unlawful contribution, gift, entertainment or other unlawful expense relating to political activity; (ii) made or taken an act in furtherance of an offer, promise or authorization of any direct or indirect unlawful payment or benefit to any foreign or domestic government official or employee, including of any government-owned or controlled entity or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any of the foregoing, or any political party or party official or candidate for political office; (iii) violated or is in violation of any provision of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, or any applicable law or regulation implementing the OECD Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions, or committed an offence under the Bribery Act 2010 of the United Kingdom or any other applicable anti-bribery or anti-corruption law; or (iv) made, offered, agreed, requested or taken an act in furtherance of any unlawful bribe or other unlawful benefit, including, without limitation, any rebate, payoff, influence payment, kickback or other unlawful or improper payment or benefit. The Company has instituted, maintains and enforces, and will continue to maintain and enforce policies and procedures designed to promote and ensure compliance with all applicable anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws.

(pp) *Compliance with Anti-Money Laundering Laws.* The operations of the Company are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements, including those of the U.S. Bank Secrecy Act, as amended by Title III of the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001 (USA PATRIOT Act) and the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, the applicable money laundering statutes of all jurisdictions where the Company conducts business, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar rules, regulations or guidelines issued, administered or enforced by any governmental agency (collectively, the “Anti-Money Laundering Laws”) and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company with respect to the Anti-Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened.

(qq) *No Conflicts with Sanctions Laws.* Neither the Company nor any of its directors, director nominees, officers, or employees, nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any agent, affiliate, representative or other person associated with or acting on behalf of the Company is currently the subject or the target of any sanctions administered or enforced by the U.S. government, (including, without limitation, the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of the Treasury or the U.S. Department of State and including, without limitation, the designation as a “specially designated national” or “blocked person”), the United Nations Security Council, the European Union, Her Majesty’s Treasury or other relevant sanctions authority (collectively, “Sanctions”), nor is the Company located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject or target of Sanctions, including, without limitation, Crimea, Cuba, Iran, North Korea and Syria (each, a “Sanctioned Country”); and the Company will not directly or indirectly use the proceeds of the Offering hereunder, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any subsidiary, joint venture partner or other person or entity (i) to fund or facilitate any activities of or business with any person that, at the time of such funding or facilitation, is the subject or target of Sanctions, (ii) to fund or facilitate any activities of or business in any Sanctioned Country or (iii) in any other manner that will result in a violation by any person (including any person participating in the transaction, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise) of Sanctions. For the past five years, the Company has not knowingly engaged in and are not now knowingly engaged in any dealings or transactions with any person that at the time of the dealing or transaction is or was the subject or the target of Sanctions or with any Sanctioned Country.

(rr) *No Registration Rights.* No person has the right to require the Company to register any securities for sale under the Securities Act by reason of the filing of the Registration Statement with the Commission or the issuance and sale of the Units.

(ss) *Compliance with Exchange Rules.* There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or, to the knowledge of the Company, any of the Company’s officers, directors or director nominees, in their capacities as such, to comply with (as and when applicable), and immediately following the initial effective date of the Registration Statement the Company will be in compliance with, the applicable requirements of the New York Stock Exchange Listed Company Manual. Further, there is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or, to the knowledge of the Company, any of the Company’s officers, directors or director nominees, in their capacities as such, to comply with (as and when applicable), and immediately following the initial effective date of the Registration Statement the Company will be in compliance with, the phase-in requirements and all other applicable provisions of the Exchange’s corporate governance requirements set forth in the Nasdaq Listing Rules.

(tt) *Transfer Taxes.* There are no transfer, stamp, issue, registration, documentary or other similar taxes, duties, fees or charges under U.S. federal law or the laws of any state, or any political subdivision thereof, or under the laws of any non-U.S. jurisdiction, required to be paid in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement or the issuance or sale by the Company of the Units.

(uu) *Questionnaires.* All information contained in the questionnaires (the “Questionnaires”) completed by the Company and Sponsor and provided to the Underwriters is true and correct; all information contained in the Questionnaires completed by the Company’s officers, directors and director nominees and provided to the Underwriters is, to the knowledge of the Company, true and correct; and the Company has not become aware of any information that would cause the information disclosed in the Questionnaires completed by the Company, the Sponsor or the Company’s officers, directors and director nominees to become inaccurate and incorrect.

(vv) *Acquisition Target Not Selected.* Prior to the date hereof, the Company has not selected any Business Combination target and has not, nor, to its knowledge, has anyone on its behalf, initiated any substantive discussions, directly or indirectly, with respect to a possible initial Business Combination, or engaged or retained any agent or other representative to identify or locate any such Business Combination candidate.

(vw) *No Broker’s Fees.* Except as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, there are no claims, payments, arrangements, contracts, agreements or understandings relating to the payment of a brokerage commission or finder’s, consulting, origination or similar fee by the Company, the Sponsor or any officer, director or director nominee of the Company with respect to the sale of the Units hereunder or any other arrangements, agreements or understandings of the Company, the Sponsor or any such officer, director or director nominee of the Company, or their respective affiliates, that may affect the Underwriters’ compensation, as determined by FINRA.

(xx) *No Direct or Indirect Payments.* Except as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, the Company has not made any direct or indirect payments (in cash, securities or any other “underwriting compensation” as defined in Rule 5110(j)(22) of FINRA’s Conduct Rules): (i) to any person, as a finder’s fee, consulting fee or otherwise, in consideration of such person raising capital for the Company or introducing to the Company persons who raised or provided capital to the Company; (ii) to any person that, to the Company’s knowledge, has been accepted by FINRA as a member of FINRA (a “Member”); or (iii) to any person or entity that, to the Company’s knowledge, has any direct or indirect affiliation or association with any Member, within the twelve months prior to the initial effective date of the Registration Statement, other than payments to the Underwriters pursuant to this Agreement.

(yy) *No Investment Banking, Financial Advisory and/or Consulting Services.* Except as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, during the period beginning 180 days prior to the initial confidential submission of the Registration Statement and ending on the initial effective date of the Registration Statement, no Member and/or any person associated or affiliated with a Member has provided any investment banking, financial advisory and/or consulting services to the Company.

(zz) *Affiliation with FINRA.* Except as disclosed in the Questionnaires provided to the Representative, to the Company's knowledge, no officer, director, director nominee or beneficial owner of any class of the Company's securities (whether debt or equity, registered or unregistered, regardless of the time acquired or the source from which derived) (any such individual or entity, a "Company Affiliate") is a Member or a person associated or affiliated with a Member.

(aaa) *Ownership of FINRA Member Securities.* Except as disclosed in the Questionnaires provided to the Representative, to the Company's knowledge, no Company Affiliate is an owner of stock or other securities of any Member (other than securities purchased on the open market).

(bbb) *Subordinated Loans to FINRA Members.* To the Company's knowledge, no Company Affiliate has made a subordinated loan to any Member.

(ccc) *Non-Compete/Non-Solicitation.* Except as described in the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, to the Company's knowledge, none of the Sponsor, officers, directors or director nominees of the Company is subject to a non-competition agreement or non-solicitation agreement with any employer, prior employer or other entity that could materially affect its, his or her ability to be and act in the capacity of stockholder, officer or director of the Company, as applicable.

(ddd) *Related Party Transactions.* No relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among any of the Company or any affiliate of the Company, on the one hand, and any director, director nominee, officer, stockholder, special advisor, customer or supplier of the Company or any affiliate of the Company, on the other hand, which is required by the Securities Act or the Exchange Act to be described in the Registration Statement, Pricing Disclosure Package or the Prospectus that is not described as required. There are no outstanding loans, advances (except normal advances for business expenses in the ordinary course of business) or guarantees of indebtedness by the Company to or for the benefit of any of the officers, directors or director nominees of the Company or any of their respective family members. The Company has not extended or maintained credit, arranged for the extension of credit, or renewed an extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan to or for any officer, director or director nominee of the Company.

(eee) *No Unlawful Influence.* The Company has not offered, or caused the Underwriters to offer, the Units to any person or entity with the intention of unlawfully influencing: (a) a customer or supplier of the Company or any affiliate of the Company to alter the customer's or supplier's level or type of business with the Company or such affiliate or (b) a journalist or publication to write or publish favorable information about the Company or any such affiliate.

(fff) *Applicability of Rule 419.* Upon delivery and payment for the Units on the Closing Date and each Additional Closing Date, the Company will not be subject to Rule 419 under the Securities Act and none of the Company's outstanding securities will be deemed to be a "penny stock" as defined in Rule 3a51-1 under the Exchange Act.

(ggg) *Absence of Manipulation.* The Company has not taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that would constitute or that might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, under the Exchange Act or otherwise, stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Units.

(hhh) *Margin Rules.* Neither the issuance, sale and delivery of the Units nor the application of the proceeds thereof by the Company as described in each of the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus will violate Regulation T, U or X of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System or any other regulation of such Board of Governors.

(iii) *Statistical and Market Data.* Nothing has come to the attention of the Company that has caused the Company to believe that the statistical and market-related data included in each of the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus is not based on or derived from sources that are reliable and accurate in all material respects.

(jjj) *Sarbanes-Oxley Act.* Solely to the extent that the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated by the Commission thereunder (the “Sarbanes-Oxley Act”) have been applicable to the Company, there is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or any of the Company’s directors or officers, in their capacities as such, to comply with any provision of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, including Section 402 related to loans and Sections 302 and 906 related to certifications.

(kkk) *Status under the Securities Act.* At the time of filing the Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto the Company was an “ineligible issuer,” as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act solely because of subclause (B) of clause (ii) of the definition thereof. The Company has paid the registration fee for the Offering pursuant to Rule 456 under the Securities Act.

(lll) *No Ratings.* There are (and prior to the Closing Date, will be) no debt securities, convertible securities or preferred stock issued or guaranteed by the Company that are rated by a “nationally recognized statistical rating organization,” as such term is defined in Section 3(a)(62) under the Exchange Act.

(mmm) *Company Ownership of Other Entities.* The Company does not own, and since its incorporation has not owned, an interest in any corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust or other entity.

4. Further Agreements of the Company. The Company covenants and agrees with each Underwriter that:

(a) *Required Filings.* The Company will file the final Prospectus with the Commission within the time periods specified by Rule 424(b) and Rule 430A, 430B or 430C under the Securities Act; and the Company will furnish copies of the Prospectus (to the extent not previously delivered) to the Underwriters in New York City prior to 10:00 A.M., New York City time, on the business day next succeeding the date of this Agreement in such quantities as the Representative may reasonably request.

(b) *Delivery of Copies.* The Company will deliver, upon request, without charge, (i) to the Representative, signed copies of the Registration Statement as originally filed and each amendment thereto, in each case including all exhibits and consents filed therewith; and (ii) to each Underwriter (A) a conformed copy of the Registration Statement as originally filed and each amendment thereto (without exhibits) and (B) during the Prospectus Delivery Period (as defined below), as many copies of the Prospectus (including all amendments and supplements thereto) as the Representative may reasonably request. As used herein, the term “Prospectus Delivery Period” means such period of time after the first date of the public offering of the Units as in the opinion of counsel for the Underwriters a prospectus relating to the Units is required by law to be delivered (or required to be delivered but for Rule 172 under the Securities Act) in connection with sales of the Units by any Underwriter or dealer.

(c) *Amendments or Supplements.* Before making, preparing, using, authorizing, approving, referring to or filing any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, the Company will furnish to the Representative and counsel for the Underwriters a copy of the proposed amendment or supplement for review and will not make, prepare, use, authorize, approve, refer to or file any such proposed amendment or supplement to which the Representative reasonably objects.

(d) *Notice to the Representative.* The Company will advise the Representative promptly, and confirm such advice in writing, (i) when the Registration Statement has become effective; (ii) when any amendment to the Registration Statement has been filed or becomes effective; (iii) when any supplement to the Pricing Disclosure Package, the Prospectus or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication or any amendment to the Prospectus has been filed or distributed; (iv) of any request by the Commission for any amendment to the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplement to the Prospectus or the receipt of any comments from the Commission relating to the Registration Statement or any other request by the Commission for any additional information, including, but not limited to, any request for information concerning any Testing-the-Waters Communication; (v) of the issuance by the Commission or any other governmental or regulatory authority of any order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus, any of the Pricing Disclosure Package, the Prospectus or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for that purpose or pursuant to Section 8A of the Securities Act; (vi) of the occurrence of any event or development within the Prospectus Delivery Period as a result of which the Prospectus, any of the Pricing Disclosure Package or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication as then amended or supplemented would include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing when the Prospectus, the Pricing Disclosure Package or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication is delivered to a purchaser, not misleading; and (vii) of the receipt by the Company of any notice with respect to any suspension of the qualification of the Units for offer and sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose; and the Company will use its reasonable best efforts to prevent the issuance of any such order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus, any of the Pricing Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication or suspending any such qualification of the Units and, if any such order is issued, will obtain as soon as possible the withdrawal thereof.

(e) *Ongoing Compliance.* (1) If during the Prospectus Delivery Period (i) any event or development shall occur or condition shall exist as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing when the Prospectus is delivered to a purchaser, not misleading or (ii) it is necessary to amend or supplement the Prospectus to comply with law, the Company will immediately notify the Underwriters thereof and forthwith prepare and, subject to paragraph (c) above, file with the Commission and furnish to the Underwriters and to such dealers as the Representative may designate such amendments or supplements to the Prospectus as may be necessary so that the statements in the Prospectus as so amended or supplemented will not, in the light of the circumstances existing when the Prospectus is delivered to a purchaser, be misleading or so that the Prospectus will comply with law and (2) if at any time prior to the Closing Date (i) any event or development shall occur or condition shall exist as a result of which the Pricing Disclosure Package as then amended or supplemented would include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing when the Pricing Disclosure Package is delivered to a purchaser, not misleading or (ii) it is necessary to amend or supplement the Pricing Disclosure Package to comply with law, the Company will immediately notify the Underwriters thereof and forthwith prepare and, subject to paragraph (c) above, file with the Commission (to the extent required) and furnish to the Underwriters and to such dealers as the Representative may designate such amendments or supplements to the Pricing Disclosure Package as may be necessary so that the statements in the Pricing Disclosure Package as so amended or supplemented will not, in the light of the circumstances existing when the Pricing Disclosure Package is delivered to a purchaser, be misleading or so that the Pricing Disclosure Package will comply with law.

(f) *Blue Sky Compliance.* The Company will qualify the Units for offer and sale under the securities or Blue Sky laws of such jurisdictions as the Representative shall reasonably request and will continue such qualifications in effect so long as required for distribution of the Units; provided that the Company shall not be required to (i) qualify as a foreign corporation or other entity or as a dealer in securities in any such jurisdiction where it would not otherwise be required to so qualify, (ii) file any general consent to service of process in any such jurisdiction or (iii) subject itself to taxation in any such jurisdiction if it is not otherwise so subject.

(g) *Earning Statement.* The Company will make generally available to its security holders and the Representative as soon as practicable an earning statement that satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) of the Securities Act and Rule 158 of the Commission promulgated thereunder covering a period of at least twelve months beginning with the first fiscal quarter of the Company occurring after the “effective date” (as defined in Rule 158) of the Registration Statement.

(h) *Clear Market.* For a period of 180 days after the date of the Prospectus, the Company will not (i) offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase, lend, or otherwise transfer or dispose of, directly or indirectly, or submit to, or file with, the Commission a registration statement under the Securities Act relating to, any Units, shares of Common Stock, Founder Shares, Warrants or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for any Units, Common Stock, Founder Shares or Warrants, or publicly disclose the intention to undertake any of the foregoing, or (ii) enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any Units, shares of Common Stock, Founder Shares or Warrants or any such other securities, whether any such transaction described in clause (i) or (ii) above is to be settled by delivery of Units or such other securities, in cash or otherwise, without the prior written consent of Cowen and Company, LLC, except, in each case, that the Company may (a) issue and sell the Private Placement Warrants, (b) issue and sell the Option Units on exercise of the option provided for in Section 2(b) hereof, (c) register with the Commission pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement, in accordance with the terms of the Registration Rights Agreement, the resale of the Founder Shares, the Private Placement Warrants and warrants that may be issued upon conversion of working capital loans (and any shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any such Private Placement Warrants or warrants issued upon conversion of the working capital loans and upon conversion of the Founder Shares), and (d) issue securities in connection with a Business Combination; provided that the foregoing restrictions shall not apply to the forfeiture of any Founder Shares pursuant to their terms or any transfer of Founder Shares to any current or future independent director of the Company (so long as such current or future independent director is subject to the terms of the Insider Letter with respect to such Founder Shares at the time of such transfer; and so long as, to the extent any Section 16 of the Exchange Act reporting obligation is triggered as a result of such transfer, any related Section 16 of the Exchange Act filing includes a practical explanation of the transfer).

The Company agrees not to amend the Insider Letter without the written consent of the Representative.

(i) *Use of Proceeds.* The Company will apply the net proceeds from the sale of the Private Placement Warrants received by it in a manner materially consistent with the applications described under the caption “Use of Proceeds” in the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(j) *No Stabilization.* Neither the Company nor its affiliates will take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that could reasonably be expected to cause or result in any stabilization or manipulation of the price of the Units.

(k) *Exchange Listing.* The Company will use its reasonable best efforts to list, subject to notice of issuance, the Units, the Common Stock and the Warrants on the Exchange.

(l) *Reports.* For a period commencing on the initial effective date of the Registration Statement and ending five years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs, the Company shall, to the extent such information or documents are not otherwise publicly available, upon written request from the Representative, furnish to the Representative copies of such financial statements and other periodic and special reports as the Company from time to time furnishes generally to holders of any class of securities, and, to the extent such information or documents are not otherwise publicly available, upon written request from the Representative, promptly furnish to the Representative: (i) a copy of such registration statements, financial statements and periodic and special reports as the Company shall be required to file with the Commission and from time to time furnishes generally to holders of any such class of its securities in their capacities as such; and (ii) such additional documents and information with respect to the Company and the affairs of any future subsidiaries of the Company as the Representative may from time to time reasonably request, all subject to the execution of a satisfactory confidentiality agreement. Any registration statements, financial statements, periodic and special reports or other additional documents referred to in the preceding sentence filed or furnished on the Commission’s EDGAR website and publicly available will be considered furnished for the purposes of this Section 4(l).

(m) *Filings.* The Company will file with the Commission such reports as may be required by Rule 463 under the Securities Act.

(n) *Emerging Growth Company.* The Company will promptly notify the Representative if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the later of (i) completion of the distribution of Units within the meaning of the Securities Act and (ii) completion of the 180-day restricted period referred to in Section 4(h) hereof.

(o) *Exchange Act Registration.* For a period commencing on the initial effective date of the Registration Statement and ending five years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs, the Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to maintain the registration of the Common Stock (or such other security into which such Common Stock may be exchanged in connection with a Business Combination) under the provisions of the Exchange Act, except after giving effect to a going private transaction after the completion of an initial Business Combination. For a period commencing on the initial effective date of the Registration Statement and ending upon the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs, the Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to maintain the registration of the Units and Warrants under the provisions of the Exchange Act. During such applicable period, the Company will not deregister the Units, Common Stock or Warrants under the Exchange Act (except in connection with an exchange pursuant to a Business Combination or a going private transaction after the completion of an initial Business Combination) without the prior written consent of the Representative.



(p) *Current Report on Form 8-K.* The Company shall, on the date hereof, retain its independent registered public accounting firm to audit the balance sheet of the Company as of the Closing Date (the “Audited Balance Sheet”) reflecting the receipt by the Company of the proceeds of the Offering on the Closing Date. As soon as the Audited Balance Sheet becomes available, the Company shall promptly, but not later than four business days after the Closing Date, file a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission, which Current Report shall contain the Company’s Audited Balance Sheet. Additionally, upon the Company’s receipt of the proceeds from the exercise of all or any portion of the option provided for in Section 2(b) hereof, the Company shall promptly, but not later than four business days after the receipt of such proceeds, file a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission, which report shall disclose the Company’s sale of the Option Units and its receipt of the proceeds therefrom, unless the receipt of such proceeds are reflected in the Current Report on Form 8-K referenced in the immediately prior sentence.

(q) *Quarterly Review.* For a period commencing on the initial effective date of the Registration Statement and ending five years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs or the Common Stock and Warrants cease to be publicly traded, the Company, at its expense, shall cause its regularly engaged independent registered public accounting firm to review (but not audit) the Company’s financial statements for each of the first three fiscal quarters prior to the announcement of quarterly financial information, the filing of the Company’s Form 10-Q quarterly report and the mailing, if any, of quarterly financial information to stockholders.

(r) *Rule 462(b) Registration Statement.* If the Company elects to rely upon Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, the Company shall file a Rule 462(b) Registration Statement with the Commission in compliance with Rule 462(b) by 10:00 P.M., Washington, D.C. time, on the date of this Agreement, and the Company shall at the time of filing either pay to the Commission the filing fee for the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement or give irrevocable instructions for the payment of such fee pursuant to Rule 111 under the Securities Act.

(s) *Transfer and Warrant Agent.* For a period commencing on the initial effective date of the Registration Statement and ending five years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs or the Common Stock and Warrants cease to be publicly traded, the Company shall retain a transfer and warrant agent.

(t) *Initial Business Combination.* The Company will not consummate an initial Business Combination with any entity that is affiliated with the Sponsor or any of the Company’s officers or directors unless it or a committee of independent and disinterested members of its board of directors obtains an opinion from an independent investment banking firm that is a member of FINRA, or from an independent accounting firm, that such initial Business Combination is fair to the Company from a financial point of view. The Company shall not pay the Sponsor or its affiliates or any of the Company’s officers, directors or any of their respective affiliates any fees or compensation of any kind for services rendered to the Company prior to, or in connection with, the consummation of an initial Business Combination; provided, however, that (x) such officers, directors and affiliates (i) may receive reimbursement for out-of-pocket expenses incurred by them in connection with activities on the Company’s behalf related to identifying, investigating, negotiating and completing an initial Business Combination and (ii) may be repaid loans as described in the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and (y) an affiliate of the Sponsor may receive up to \$10,000 per month in reimbursement for office space, secretarial and administrative services provided to members of the Company’s management team, none of which payments described in (x) or (y) will be made from the proceeds held in the Trust Account prior to completion of the initial Business Combination.

(u) *FINRA Submissions.* For a period of 60 days following the effective date of the Registration Statement, in the event any person or entity (regardless of any FINRA affiliation or association) is engaged to assist the Company in its search for a merger candidate or to provide any other merger and acquisition services, or has provided or will provide any investment banking, financial, advisory and/or consulting services to the Company, the Company agrees that it shall promptly provide to FINRA (via a FINRA submission), the Representative and its counsel a notification prior to entering into the agreement or transaction relating to a potential Business Combination: (i) the identity of the person or entity providing any such services; (ii) complete details of all such services and copies of all agreements governing such services prior to entering into the agreement or transaction; and (iii) justification as to why the value received by any person or entity for such services is not underwriting compensation for the Offering. The Company also agrees that proper disclosure of such arrangement or potential arrangement will be made in the tender offer materials or proxy statement, as applicable, which the Company may file in connection with the Business Combination for purposes of offering redemption of shares held by its stockholders or for soliciting stockholder approval, as applicable.

(v) *Affiliates or Associated Persons of Members.* The Company shall advise FINRA, the Representative and its counsel if it is aware that any 5% or greater stockholder of the Company becomes an affiliate or associated person of a Member participating in the distribution of the Units.

(w) *Trust Account Investments.* The Company shall cause the proceeds of the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Warrants to be held in the Trust Account to be invested only in United States government treasury bills with a maturity of 185 days or less or in money market funds meeting certain conditions under Rule 2a-7 under the Investment Company Act as set forth in the Trust Agreement and disclosed in the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. The Company will otherwise conduct its business in a manner so that it will not become subject to the Investment Company Act. Furthermore, once the Company consummates an initial Business Combination, it will not be required to register as an investment company under the Investment Company Act.

(x) *Use of Funds in Trust Account.* During the period prior to the Company's initial Business Combination or Liquidation, the Company may instruct the Trustee to release from the Trust Account, (i) solely from interest income earned on the funds held in the Trust Account, the amounts necessary to pay taxes, if any, and (ii) to pay Public Stockholders who properly redeem their Public Shares (as defined below) in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (x) to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to allow redemption in connection with its initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the outstanding Public Shares if the Company has not consummated an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering or (y) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity. Otherwise, all funds held in the Trust Account (including any interest income earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account (net of taxes payable thereon in accordance with the preceding sentence)) will remain in the Trust Account until the earlier of the consummation of the Company's initial Business Combination and the Liquidation; provided, however, that in the event of the Liquidation, up to \$100,000 of interest income may be released to the Company if the proceeds of the Offering held by the Company outside of the Trust Account are not sufficient to cover the costs and expenses associated with implementing the Company's plan of dissolution.

(y) *Availability of Authorized but Unissued Securities.* The Company will reserve and keep available that maximum number of its authorized but unissued securities that are issuable upon the exercise of any of the Warrants, the Private Placement Warrants and warrants that may be issued upon conversion of working capital loans outstanding from time to time and upon the conversion of the Founder Shares.

(z) *No Additional Issuances prior to the Business Combination.* Prior to the earlier of the consummation of an initial Business Combination and the Liquidation, the Company shall not issue (other than in replacement for lost, stolen or mutilated certificates) any shares of Common Stock, Warrants or any options or other securities convertible into shares of Common Stock, or any preferred stock, in each case, that (1) receive funds from the Trust Account or (2) vote as a class with the Public Shares (a) on any initial Business Combination or (b) to approve an amendment to the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation to (i) extend the time the Company has to consummate a Business Combination beyond 24 months from the Closing Date or (ii) amend the foregoing provisions.

(aa) *Audit Committee Review.* Prior to the earlier of the consummation of an initial Business Combination and the Liquidation, the Company's audit committee will review on a quarterly basis all payments made by the Company to the Sponsor, to the Company's officers or directors, or to the Company's or any of such other persons' respective affiliates.

(bb) *Penny Stock.* The Company agrees that it will use commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the Company from becoming subject to Rule 419 under the Securities Act prior to the consummation of any Business Combination, including, but not limited to, using its best efforts to prevent any of the Company's outstanding securities from being deemed to be a "penny stock" as defined in Rule 3a51-1 under the Exchange Act during such period.

(cc) *Internal Controls.* To the extent required by Rule 13a-15(e) under the Exchange Act, the Company will maintain "disclosure controls and procedures" (as defined under Rule 13a-15(e) under the Exchange Act) and a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary in order to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP and to maintain accountability for assets, (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences.

(dd) *Maintenance of Listing.* The Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to effect and maintain the listing of (x) the Units and Warrants on the Exchange (or another national securities exchange) until the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which the Liquidation occurs, and (y) the Common Stock on the Exchange (or another national securities exchange) until five years from the date of the consummation of the Business Combination or until such earlier time at which Liquidation occurs.

(ee) *Sarbanes Oxley.* As soon as legally required to do so, the Company and its directors and officers, in their capacities as such, shall take all actions necessary to comply with any applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, including Section 402 related to loans and Sections 302 and 906 related to certifications, and to comply with the rules of the Exchange.

(ff) *Certificate of Incorporation.* The Company shall not take any action or omit to take any action that would cause the Company to be in breach or violation of its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.

(gg) *Consummate the Initial Business Combination.* The Company, subject to any applicable provision of the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, may consummate the initial Business Combination and conduct redemptions of Public Shares for cash upon consummation of such Business Combination without a stockholder vote pursuant to Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E under the Exchange Act, including the filing of tender offer documents with the Commission. Such tender offer documents will contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial Business Combination and the redemption rights as is required under the Commission's proxy rules and will provide each stockholder of the Company with the opportunity prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination to redeem the shares of Common Stock held by such stockholder for an amount of cash equal to (A) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, calculated as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, representing (x) the proceeds held in the Trust Account from the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Warrants and (y) any interest income earned on the funds held in the Trust Account (which interest shall be net of taxes payable), divided by (B) the total number of shares of Common Stock sold as part of the Units in the Offering (the "Public Shares") then outstanding. If, however, a stockholder vote is required by applicable law or stock exchange listing requirement in connection with the initial Business Combination, or the Company decides to hold a stockholder vote for business or other reasons, the Company will submit such Business Combination to the Company's stockholders for their approval ("Business Combination Vote"). With respect to the initial Business Combination Vote, if any, each of the Sponsor and the Company's directors and officers has agreed to vote all of the Founder Shares and Public Shares it then holds, if any, in favor of the Company's initial Business Combination. If the Company seeks stockholder approval of the initial Business Combination, the Company will offer to each Public Stockholder the right to have its shares redeemed in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the proxy rules of the Commission at a per share redemption price (the "Redemption Price") equal to (I) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, calculated as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, representing (1) the proceeds held in the Trust Account from the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Warrants and (2) interest income earned on the funds held in the Trust Account (which interest shall be net of any taxes payable), divided by (II) the total number of Public Shares then outstanding. If the Company seeks stockholder approval of the initial Business Combination, the Company may proceed with such Business Combination only if a majority of the outstanding shares voted by the stockholders at a duly held stockholders meeting are voted to approve such Business Combination. If, after seeking and receiving such stockholder approval, the Company elects to so proceed, it will redeem shares, at the Redemption Price, from those Public Stockholders who validly and affirmatively requested (and not withdrawn such request) such redemption. Only Public Stockholders who properly and timely exercise their redemption rights (and not withdrawn such request), in accordance with the applicable tender offer or proxy materials related to such Business Combination and the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, shall be entitled to receive distributions from the Trust Account in connection with an initial Business Combination, and the Company shall pay no distributions with respect to any other holders of shares of capital stock of the Company in connection therewith. In the event that the Company does not effect a Business Combination by 24 months from the closing of the Offering (or such later date as has been approved pursuant to a valid amendment to the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation), the Company will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding Public Shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable and less up to \$100,000 of such net interest to pay dissolution expenses), divided by the number of then outstanding Public Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish Public Stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidation distributions, if any), and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law. Only Public Stockholders holding shares of Common Stock included in the Units shall be entitled to receive such redemption amounts and the Company shall pay no such redemption amounts or any distributions in liquidation with respect to any other shares of capital stock of the Company. The Sponsor and the Company's officers and directors have agreed that they will not propose any amendment to the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (A) to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to allow redemption in connection with its initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the outstanding Public Shares if the Company has not consummated an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering or (B) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity, unless the Company offers to the Public Stockholders the right to redeem their Public Shares in connection with such amendment, as described in the Pricing Disclosure Package and Prospectus.

(hh) *Business Combination Announcement.* In the event that the Company desires or is required by an applicable law or regulation to cause an announcement (a “Business Combination Announcement”) to be placed in The Wall Street Journal, The New York Times or any other news or media publication or outlet or to be made via a public filing or submission with the Commission announcing the consummation of an initial Business Combination that indicates that the Underwriters were the underwriters in the Offering, the Company shall supply the Representative with a draft of the Business Combination Announcement and provide the Representative with a reasonable advance opportunity to comment thereon, subject to the agreement of the Underwriters to keep confidential such draft announcement in accordance with the Representative’s standard policies regarding confidential information.

(ii) *Forfeiture.* Upon the earlier to occur of the expiration and termination of the Underwriters’ over-allotment option, the Company shall cancel or otherwise effect the forfeiture of Founder Shares from the Sponsor, in an aggregate amount equal to the number of Founder Shares determined by multiplying (a) 1,031,250 by (b) a fraction, (i) the numerator of which is 4,125,000 minus the number of Option Units purchased by the Underwriters upon the exercise of their over-allotment option, and (ii) the denominator of which is 4,125,000. For the avoidance of doubt, if the Underwriters exercise their over-allotment option in full, the Company shall not cancel or otherwise effect the forfeiture of the Founder Shares pursuant to this Section 4(ii).

(jj) *Written Testing-the-Waters Communication.* If at any time following the distribution of any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication included or would include any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state any material fact necessary to make the statements therein in the light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly (i) notify the Representative so that use of the Written Testing-the-Waters Communication may cease until it is amended or supplemented; (ii) amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication to eliminate or correct such untrue statement or omission; and (iii) supply any amendment or supplement to the Representative in such quantities as may be reasonably requested.

(kk) *Emerging Growth Company.* The Company will promptly notify the Representative if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the later of (i) completion of the distribution of the Units within the meaning of the Securities Act and (ii) completion of the 180-day restricted period referred to in Section 4(h) hereof.

(ll) *Delivery of Documents.* The Company will deliver to the Representative executed copies of the Trust Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Sponsor Purchase Agreement, the Founder Promissory Note, the Warrant Purchase Agreements, the Registration Rights Agreement and the Insider Letter.

(mm) *Trust Account Waiver.* The Company will seek to have all vendors, service providers (other than the Underwriters and its independent registered public accounting firm), prospective target businesses and other entities with which it does business enter into an agreement waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account for the benefit of the Public Stockholders. The Company may forego obtaining such waivers only if the Company's management shall have determined that such third party's engagement would be significantly more beneficial to the Company than any alternative.

(nn) *Certification of Beneficial Ownership.* The Company will deliver to each Underwriter (or its agent), on the date of execution of this Agreement, a properly completed and executed Certification Regarding Beneficial Owners and Key Controllers of Legal Entity Customers, together with copies of identifying documentation, and the Company undertakes to provide such additional supporting documentation as each Underwriter may reasonably request in connection with the verification of the foregoing Certification.

5. Certain Agreements of the Underwriters. Each of the Underwriters hereby represents and agrees that it is not subject to any pending proceeding under Section 8A of the Securities Act with respect to the Offering (and will promptly notify the Company if any such proceeding against it is initiated during the Prospectus Delivery Period).

6. Conditions of Underwriters' Obligations. The obligation of each Underwriter to purchase the Underwritten Units on the Closing Date or the Option Units on the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, as provided herein is subject to the performance by the Company of its covenants and other obligations hereunder and to the following additional conditions:

(a) *Registration Compliance; No Stop Order.* No order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement shall be in effect, and no proceeding for such purpose or pursuant to Section 8A under the Securities Act shall be pending before or threatened by the Commission; the Prospectus shall have been timely filed with the Commission under the Securities Act and in accordance with Section 4(a) hereof; and all requests by the Commission for additional information shall have been complied with to the reasonable satisfaction of the Representative.

(b) *Representations and Warranties.* The representations and warranties of the Company contained herein shall be true and correct on the date hereof and on and as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be; and the statements of the Company and its officers made in any certificates delivered pursuant to this Agreement shall be true and correct on and as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be.

(c) *No Material Adverse Change.* No event or condition of a type described in Section 3(i) hereof shall have occurred or shall exist, which event or condition is not described in the Pricing Disclosure Package (excluding any amendment or supplement thereto) and the Prospectus (excluding any amendment or supplement thereto) and the effect of which in the judgment of the Representative makes it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the offering, sale or delivery of the Units on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, on the terms and in the manner contemplated by this Agreement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(d) *Officers' Certificate.* The Representative shall have received on and as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, a certificate of the chief financial officer or chief accounting officer of the Company and one additional senior executive officer of the Company who is satisfactory to the Representative (i) confirming that such officers have carefully reviewed the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and, to the knowledge of such officers, the representations set forth in Sections 3(b) and 3(c) hereof are true and correct, (ii) confirming that the other representations and warranties of the Company in this Agreement are true and correct and that the Company has complied with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied hereunder at or prior to the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, and (iii) to the effect set forth in paragraphs (a) and (c) above.

(e) *Comfort Letters.* On the date of this Agreement and on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, Marcum LLP shall have furnished to the Representative, at the request of the Company, letters, dated the respective dates of delivery thereof and addressed to the Underwriters, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Representative, containing statements and information of the type customarily included in accountants' "comfort letters" to underwriters with respect to the financial statements and certain financial information contained in each of the Registration Statement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus; provided, that the letter delivered on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, shall use a "cut-off" date no more than two business days prior to such Closing Date or such Additional Closing Date, as the case may be.

(f) *Opinion and 10b-5 Statement of Counsel for the Company.* Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough, LLP, counsel for the Company, shall have furnished to the Representative, at the request of the Company, their written opinion and 10b-5 statement, dated the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, and addressed to the Underwriters, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Representative.

(g) *Opinion and 10b-5 Statement of Counsel for the Underwriters.* The Representative shall have received on and as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, an opinion and 10b-5 statement, addressed to the Underwriters, of Greenberg Traurig, LLP, counsel for the Underwriters, with respect to such matters as the Representative may reasonably request, and such counsel shall have received such documents and information as they may reasonably request to enable them to pass upon such matters.

(h) *No Legal Impediment to Issuance and Sale.* No action shall have been taken and no statute, rule, regulation or order shall have been enacted, adopted or issued by any federal, state or foreign governmental or regulatory authority that would, as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, prevent the issuance or sale of the Units; and no injunction or order of any federal, state or foreign court shall have been issued that would, as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, prevent the issuance or sale of the Units.

(i) *Good Standing.* The Representative shall have received on and as of the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, satisfactory evidence of the good standing of the Company in its jurisdiction of organization and its good standing in such other jurisdictions as the Representative may reasonably request, in each case in writing or any standard form of telecommunication from the appropriate governmental authorities of such jurisdictions.

(j) *Exchange Listing.* The Units to be delivered on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, shall have been approved for listing on the Exchange, subject to official notice of issuance.

(k) *Delivery of Transaction Documents.* On or prior to the Closing Date, the Company shall have delivered to the Representative executed copies of this Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Sponsor Purchase Agreement, the Founder Promissory Note, the Warrant Purchase Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement and the Insider Letter, and each of the Transaction Documents shall be in full force and effect on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be.

(l) *Funding of Private Placement Warrants.* At least one business day prior to the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as applicable, the Company shall have caused proceeds from the sale of the Private Placement Warrants to be deposited into the Trust Account such that the cumulative amount deposited into the Trust Account as of such Closing Date or Additional Closing Date shall equal the product of the number of Units sold in the public offering as of such Closing Date or Additional Closing Date and the public offering price per Unit as set forth on the cover of the Prospectus.

(m) *FINRA.* FINRA shall not have raised any objection with respect to the fairness or reasonableness of the underwriting or other arrangements of the transactions contemplated hereby.

(n) *Additional Documents.* On or prior to the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, the Company shall have furnished to the Representative such further certificates and documents as the Representative may reasonably request.

All opinions, letters, certificates and evidence mentioned above or elsewhere in this Agreement shall be deemed to be in compliance with the provisions hereof only if they are in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters.

## 7. Indemnification and Contribution.

(a) *Indemnification of the Underwriters.* The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless each Underwriter, each of its affiliates, directors and officers and each person, if any, who controls such Underwriter within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act, from and against any and all losses, claims, damages and liabilities (including, without limitation, legal fees and other expenses incurred in connection with any suit, action or proceeding or any claim asserted, as such fees and expenses are incurred), joint or several, that arise out of, or are based upon, (i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement or caused by any omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, not misleading, or (ii) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto), any Preliminary Prospectus, any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, any road show as defined in Rule 433(h) under the Securities Act (a “road show”) or any Pricing Disclosure Package (including any Pricing Disclosure Package that has subsequently been amended), or caused by any omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, in each case except insofar as such losses, claims, damages or liabilities arise out of, or are based upon, any untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission made in reliance upon and in conformity with any information relating to any Underwriter furnished to the Company in writing by such Underwriter through the Representative expressly for use therein, it being understood and agreed that the only such information furnished by any Underwriter consists of the information described as such in paragraph (b) below.

(b) *Indemnification of the Company.* Each Underwriter agrees, severally and not jointly, to indemnify and hold harmless the Company and each of its directors, each of its officers who signed the Registration Statement and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act to the same extent as the indemnity set forth in paragraph (a) above, but only with respect to any losses, claims, damages or liabilities that arise out of, or are based upon, any untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission made in reliance upon and in conformity with any information relating to such Underwriter furnished to the Company in writing by such Underwriter through the Representative expressly for use in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto), any Preliminary Prospectus, any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, any road show or any Pricing Disclosure Package (including any Pricing Disclosure Package that has subsequently been amended), it being understood and agreed that the only such information furnished by any Underwriter consists of the following information in the Prospectus furnished on behalf of each Underwriter: (y) the concession figure appearing in the fourth paragraph under the caption “Underwriting” and (z) the fourteenth through seventeenth paragraphs under the caption “Underwriting.”



(c) *Notice and Procedures.* If any suit, action, proceeding (including any governmental or regulatory investigation), claim or demand shall be brought or asserted against any person in respect of which indemnification may be sought pursuant to the preceding paragraphs of this Section 7, such person (the "Indemnified Person") shall promptly notify the person against whom such indemnification may be sought (the "Indemnifying Person") in writing; provided that the failure to notify the Indemnifying Person shall not relieve it from any liability that it may have under the preceding paragraphs of this Section 7 except to the extent that it has been materially prejudiced (through the forfeiture of substantive rights or defenses) by such failure; and provided, further, that the failure to notify the Indemnifying Person shall not relieve it from any liability that it may have to an Indemnified Person otherwise than under the preceding paragraphs of this Section 7. If any such proceeding shall be brought or asserted against an Indemnified Person and it shall have notified the Indemnifying Person thereof, the Indemnifying Person shall retain counsel reasonably satisfactory to the Indemnified Person (who shall not, without the consent of the Indemnified Person, be counsel to the Indemnifying Person) to represent the Indemnified Person and any others entitled to indemnification pursuant to this Section 7 that the Indemnifying Person may designate in such proceeding and shall pay the fees and expenses in such proceeding and shall pay the fees and expenses of such counsel related to such proceeding, as incurred. In any such proceeding, any Indemnified Person shall have the right to retain its own counsel, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such Indemnified Person unless (i) the Indemnifying Person and the Indemnified Person shall have mutually agreed to the contrary; (ii) the Indemnifying Person has failed within a reasonable time to retain counsel reasonably satisfactory to the Indemnified Person; (iii) the Indemnified Person shall have reasonably concluded that there may be actual or potential legal defenses available to it that are different from or in addition to those available to the Indemnifying Person; or (iv) the named parties in any such proceeding (including any impleaded parties) include both the Indemnifying Person and the Indemnified Person and representation of both parties by the same counsel would be inappropriate due to actual or potential differing interests between them. It is understood and agreed that the Indemnifying Person shall not, in connection with any proceeding or related proceeding in the same jurisdiction, be liable for the fees and expenses of more than one separate firm (in addition to any local counsel) for all Indemnified Persons, and that all such fees and expenses shall be paid or reimbursed as they are incurred. Any such separate firm for any Underwriter, its affiliates, directors and officers and any control persons of such Underwriter shall be designated in writing by the Representative and any such separate firm for the Company, its directors, its officers who signed the Registration Statement and any control persons of the Company shall be designated in writing by the Company. The Indemnifying Person shall not be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent, but if settled with such consent, the Indemnifying Person agrees to indemnify each Indemnified Person from and against any loss or liability by reason of such settlement. Notwithstanding the foregoing sentence, if at any time an Indemnified Person shall have requested that an Indemnifying Person reimburse the Indemnified Person for fees and expenses of counsel as contemplated by this paragraph, the Indemnifying Person shall be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than 30 days after receipt by the Indemnifying Person of such request and (ii) the Indemnifying Person shall not have reimbursed the Indemnified Person in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement. No Indemnifying Person shall, without the written consent of the Indemnified Person, effect any settlement of any pending or threatened proceeding in respect of which any Indemnified Person is or could have been a party and indemnification could have been sought hereunder by such Indemnified Person, unless such settlement (x) includes an unconditional release of such Indemnified Person, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnified Person, from all liability on claims that are the subject matter of such proceeding and (y) does not include any statement as to or any admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any Indemnified Person.

(d) *Contribution.* If the indemnification provided for in paragraphs (a) or (b) above is unavailable to an Indemnified Person or insufficient in respect of any losses, claims, damages or liabilities referred to therein, then each Indemnifying Person under such paragraph, in lieu of indemnifying such Indemnified Person thereunder, shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by such Indemnified Person as a result of such losses, claims, damages or liabilities (i) in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters on the other, from the Offering or (ii) if the allocation provided by clause (i) is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in clause (i) but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters on the other, in connection with the statements or omissions that resulted in such losses, claims, damages or liabilities, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters on the other, shall be deemed to be in the same respective proportions as the net proceeds (before deducting expenses) received by the Company from the sale of the Units and the total underwriting discounts and commissions received by the Underwriters in connection therewith, in each case as set forth in the table on the cover of the Prospectus, bear to the aggregate offering price of the Units. The relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters on the other, shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or by the Underwriters and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission.

(e) *Limitation on Liability.* The Company and the Underwriters agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to paragraph (d) above were determined by pro rata allocation (even if the Underwriters were treated as one entity for such purpose) or by any other method of allocation that does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in paragraph (d) above. The amount paid or payable by an Indemnified Person as a result of the losses, claims, damages and liabilities referred to in paragraph (d) above shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth above, any legal or other expenses incurred by such Indemnified Person in connection with any such action or claim. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraphs (d) and (e), in no event shall an Underwriter be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the total underwriting discounts and commissions received by such Underwriter with respect to the Offering exceeds the amount of any damages that such Underwriter has otherwise been required to pay by reason of such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. The Underwriters' obligations to contribute pursuant to paragraphs (d) and (e) are several in proportion to their respective purchase obligations hereunder and not joint.

(f) *Non-Exclusive Remedies.* The remedies provided for in this Section 7 are not exclusive and shall not limit any rights or remedies which may otherwise be available to any Indemnified Person under this Agreement, at law or in equity.

8. Effectiveness of Agreement. This Agreement shall become effective as of the date first written above.

9. Termination. This Agreement may be terminated in the absolute discretion of the Representative, by notice to the Company, if after the execution and delivery of this Agreement and on or prior to the Closing Date or, in the case of the Option Units, prior to the Additional Closing Date (i) trading generally shall have been suspended or materially limited on or by any of the New York Stock Exchange or The Nasdaq Stock Market; (ii) trading of any securities issued or guaranteed by the Company shall have been suspended on any exchange or in any over-the-counter market; (iii) a general moratorium on commercial banking activities shall have been declared by federal or New York State authorities; or (iv) there shall have occurred any outbreak or escalation of hostilities or any change in financial markets or any calamity or crisis, either within or outside the United States, that, in the judgment of the Representative, is material and adverse and makes it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the offering, sale or delivery of the Units on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, on the terms and in the manner contemplated by this Agreement, the Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

10. Defaulting Underwriter.

(a) If, on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, any Underwriter defaults on its obligation to purchase the Units that it has agreed to purchase hereunder on such date, the non-defaulting Underwriters may in their discretion arrange for the purchase of such Units by other persons satisfactory to the Company on the terms contained in this Agreement. If, within 36 hours after any such default by any Underwriter, the non-defaulting Underwriters do not arrange for the purchase of such Units, then the Company shall be entitled to a further period of 36 hours within which to procure other persons satisfactory to the non-defaulting Underwriters to purchase such Units on such terms. If other persons become obligated or agree to purchase the Units of a defaulting Underwriter, either the non-defaulting Underwriters or the Company may postpone the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, for up to five full business days in order to effect any changes that in the opinion of counsel for the Company or counsel for the Underwriters may be necessary in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus or in any other document or arrangement, and the Company agrees to promptly prepare any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus that effects any such changes. As used in this Agreement, the term "Underwriter" includes, for all purposes of this Agreement unless the context otherwise requires, any person not listed in Schedule 1 hereto that, pursuant to this Section 10, purchases Units that a defaulting Underwriter agreed but failed to purchase.

(b) If, after giving effect to any arrangements for the purchase of the Units of a defaulting Underwriter or Underwriters by the non-defaulting Underwriters and the Company as provided in paragraph (a) above, the aggregate number of Units that remain unpurchased on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, does not exceed 10% of the aggregate number of Units to be purchased on such date, then the Company shall have the right to require each non-defaulting Underwriter to purchase the number of Units that such Underwriter agreed to purchase hereunder on such date plus such Underwriter's pro rata share (based on the number of Units that such Underwriter agreed to purchase on such date) of the Units of such defaulting Underwriter or Underwriters for which such arrangements have not been made.

(c) If, after giving effect to any arrangements for the purchase of the Units of a defaulting Underwriter or Underwriters by the non-defaulting Underwriters and the Company as provided in paragraph (a) above, the aggregate number of Units that remain unpurchased on the Closing Date or the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, exceeds 10% of the aggregate amount of Units to be purchased on such date, or if the Company shall not exercise the right described in paragraph (b) above, then this Agreement or, with respect to any Additional Closing Date, the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase Units on the Additional Closing Date, as the case may be, shall terminate without liability on the part of the non-defaulting Underwriters. Any termination of this Agreement pursuant to this Section 10 shall be without liability on the part of the Company, except that the Company will continue to be liable for the payment of expenses as set forth in Section 11 hereof and except that the provisions of Section 7 hereof shall not terminate and shall remain in effect.

(d) Nothing contained herein shall relieve a defaulting Underwriter of any liability it may have to the Company or any non-defaulting Underwriter for damages caused by its default.

11. Payment of Expenses.

(a) Whether or not the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are consummated or this Agreement is terminated, the Company will pay or cause to be paid all costs and expenses incident to the performance of its obligations hereunder, including without limitation, (i) the costs incident to the authorization, issuance, sale, preparation and delivery of the Units and any taxes payable in that connection; (ii) the costs incident to the preparation, printing and filing under the Securities Act of the Registration Statement, the Preliminary Prospectus, any Pricing Disclosure Package and the Prospectus (including all exhibits, amendments and supplements thereto) and the distribution thereof; (iii) the costs of reproducing and distributing each of the Transaction Documents; (iv) the fees and expenses of the Company's counsel and independent accountants; (v) the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the registration or qualification and determination of eligibility for investment of the Units under the laws of such jurisdictions as the Representative may designate and the preparation, printing and distribution of a Blue Sky Memorandum (including the related fees and expenses of counsel for the Underwriters); (vi) the cost of preparing stock certificates; (vii) the costs and charges of any transfer agent, trustee, warrant agent and registrar; (viii) all expenses and application fees incurred in connection with any filing with, and clearance of the offering by, FINRA (including the reasonable and documented fees and expenses of counsel for the Underwriters relating to such filings up to \$25,000); (ix) all expenses incurred by the Company in connection with any "road show" presentation to potential investors; and (x) all expenses and application fees related to the listing of the Units on the Exchange.

(b) If (i) this Agreement is terminated pursuant to Section 9 (other than clauses (iii) and (iv)), (ii) the Company for any reason fails to tender the Units for delivery to the Underwriters or (iii) the Underwriters decline to purchase the Units for any reason permitted under this Agreement, the Company agrees to reimburse the Underwriters for all out-of-pocket costs and expenses (including the fees and expenses of their counsel) reasonably incurred by the Underwriters in connection with this Agreement and the Offering.

12. Persons Entitled to Benefit of Agreement. This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors and the officers and directors and any controlling persons referred to herein, and the affiliates of each party referred to in Section 7 hereof. Nothing in this Agreement is intended or shall be construed to give any other person any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Agreement or any provision contained herein. No purchaser of Units from any Underwriter shall be deemed to be a successor merely by reason of such purchase.

13. Survival. The respective indemnities, rights of contribution, representations, warranties and agreements of the Company and the Underwriters contained in this Agreement or made by or on behalf of the Company or the Underwriters pursuant to this Agreement or any certificate delivered pursuant hereto shall survive the delivery of and payment for the Units and shall remain in full force and effect, regardless of any termination of this Agreement or any investigation made by or on behalf of the Company or the Underwriters or the directors, officers, controlling persons or affiliates referred to in Section 7 hereof.

14. Certain Defined Terms. For purposes of this Agreement, (a) except where otherwise expressly provided, the term “affiliate” has the meaning set forth in Rule 405 under the Securities Act; and (b) the term “business day” means any day other than a day on which banks are permitted or required to be closed in New York City; and (c) the term “Liquidation” means the distributions of the Trust Account to the Public Stockholders in connection with the redemption of the Common Stock held by the Public Stockholders pursuant to the terms of the Company’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as amended, if the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination with the time period provided therein.

15. Compliance with USA Patriot Act. In accordance with the requirements of the USA Patriot Act (Title III of Pub. L. 107-56 (signed into law October 26, 2001)), the Underwriters are required to obtain, verify and record information that identifies their respective clients, including the Company, which information may include the name and address of their respective clients, as well as other information that will allow the Underwriters to properly identify their respective clients.

16. Miscellaneous.

(a) *Notices.* All notices and other communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given if mailed or transmitted and confirmed by any standard form of telecommunication.

Notices to the Underwriters shall be given to the Representative at:

Cowen and Company, LLC  
599 Lexington Avenue  
New York, New York 10022  
Attention: Head of Equity Capital Markets,  
with a copy to the General Counsel, Investment Banking

with a copy to:

Greenberg Traurig, LLP  
1750 Tysons Boulevard, Suite 1000  
McLean, VA 22102  
Attn: Jason T. Simon, Esq.

Notices to the Company shall be given to it at:

MCAP Acquisition Corporation  
311 South Wacker Drive, Suite 6400  
Chicago, IL 60606  
Attn: Theodore L. Koenig, Chief Executive Officer

with a copy to:

Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough LLP  
101 Constitution Ave, N.W., Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20001  
Attn: Jonathan H. Talcott, Esq.

(b) *Governing Law.* This Agreement and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to this Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

(c) *Submission to Jurisdiction.* The Company hereby submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the U.S. federal and New York state courts in the Borough of Manhattan in The City of New York in any suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby. The Company waives any objection which it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such suit or proceeding in such courts. The Company agrees that final judgment in any such suit, action or proceeding brought in such court shall be conclusive and binding upon the Company and may be enforced in any court to the jurisdiction of which Company is subject by a suit upon such judgment.

(d) *Waiver of Jury Trial.* **EACH OF THE PARTIES HERETO HEREBY WAIVES ANY RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY SUIT OR PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT.**

(e) *Recognition of the U.S. Special Resolution Regimes.*

(i) In the event that any Underwriter that is a Covered Entity (as defined below) becomes subject to a proceeding under a U.S. Special Resolution Regime (as defined below), the transfer from such Underwriter of this Agreement, and any interest and obligation in or under this Agreement, will be effective to the same extent as the transfer would be effective under the U.S. Special Resolution Regime if this Agreement, and any such interest and obligation, were governed by the laws of the United States or a state of the United States.

(ii) In the event that any Underwriter that is a Covered Entity or a BHC Act Affiliate (as defined below) of such Underwriter becomes subject to a proceeding under a U.S. Special Resolution Regime, Default Rights (as defined below) under this Agreement that may be exercised against such Underwriter are permitted to be exercised to no greater extent than such Default Rights could be exercised under the U.S. Special Resolution Regime if this Agreement were governed by the laws of the United States or a state of the United States.

As used in this Section 16(e):

“BHC Act Affiliate” has the meaning assigned to the term “affiliate” in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, 12 U.S.C. § 1841(k).

“Covered Entity” means any of the following:

- (i) a “covered entity” as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 252.82(b);
- (ii) a “covered bank” as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 47.3(b); or
- (iii) a “covered FSI” as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 382.2(b).

“Default Right” has the meaning assigned to that term in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. §§ 252.81, 47.2 or 382.1, as applicable.

“U.S. Special Resolution Regime” means each of (i) the Federal Deposit Insurance Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder and (ii) Title II of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

(f) *Counterparts.* This Agreement may be signed in counterparts (which may include counterparts delivered by any standard form of telecommunication), each of which shall be an original and all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument. Counterparts may be delivered via facsimile, electronic mail (including any electronic signature covered by the U.S. federal ESIGN Act of 2000, Uniform Electronic Transactions Act, the Electronic Signatures and Records Act or other applicable law, e.g., [www.docusign.com](http://www.docusign.com)) or other transmission method and any counterpart so delivered shall be deemed to have been duly and validly delivered and be valid and effective for all purposes.

(g) *Amendments or Waivers.* No amendment or waiver of any provision of this Agreement, nor any consent or approval to any departure therefrom, shall in any event be effective unless the same shall be in writing and signed by the parties hereto.

(h) *Headings.* The headings herein are included for convenience of reference only and are not intended to be part of, or to affect the meaning or interpretation of, this Agreement.

(i) *Integration.* This Agreement supersedes all prior agreements and understandings (whether written or oral) between the Company and the Underwriters, or any of them, with respect to the subject matter hereof.

[Signature page follows]

If the foregoing is in accordance with your understanding, please indicate your acceptance of this Agreement by signing in the space provided below.

Very truly yours,

MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: /s/ Theodore L. Koenig  
Name: Theodore L. Koenig  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

Accepted as of the date first written above,  
for itself and on behalf of the several Underwriters  
listed in Schedule 1 hereto,

COWEN AND COMPANY, LLC

By: /s/ Christopher Weekes  
Name: Christopher Weekes  
Title: Managing Director

*[Signature Page to Underwriting Agreement]*

---



SCHEDULE 1

Underwriter	Number of Units
Cowen and Company, LLC	27,500,000
<b>Total</b>	<b>27,500,000</b>

---

## ANNEX A

The initial public offering price per Unit for the Units is \$10.00. The number of Units purchased by the Underwriters is 27,500,000. The Underwriters have an option to purchase an additional 4,125,000 Units to cover over-allotments, if any.

---

## ANNEX B

### Written Testing-the-Waters Communications

Reference is made to the materials used in the testing the waters presentation made to potential investors by the Company, to the extent such materials are deemed to be a “written communication” within the meaning of Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

---

**AMENDED AND RESTATED  
CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION  
OF  
MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

February 25, 2021

MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (the “**Corporation**”), DOES HEREBY CERTIFY AS FOLLOWS:

1. The name of the Corporation is “**MCAP Acquisition Corporation**”. The original certificate of incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on November 12, 2020 (the “**Original Certificate**”).
2. This Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the “**Amended and Restated Certificate**”), which both restates and further amends the provisions of the Original Certificate, was duly adopted in accordance with Sections 242 and 245 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, as amended from time to time (the “**DGCL**”), and by written consent of the Corporation’s stockholders in accordance with Section 228 of the DGCL.
3. This Amended and Restated Certificate shall become effective on the date of filing with the Secretary of State of Delaware.
4. The text of the Original Certificate is hereby restated and amended in its entirety to read as follows:

**ARTICLE I  
NAME**

The name of the corporation is MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the “**Corporation**”).

**ARTICLE II  
PURPOSE**

The purpose of the Corporation is to engage in any lawful act or activity for which corporations may be organized under the DGCL. In addition to the powers and privileges conferred upon the Corporation by law and those incidental thereto, the Corporation shall possess and may exercise all the powers and privileges that are necessary or convenient to the conduct, promotion or attainment of the business or purposes of the Corporation, including, but not limited to, effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Corporation and one or more businesses (a “**Business Combination**”).

**ARTICLE III  
REGISTERED AGENT**

The registered office of the Corporation in the State of Delaware is 1209 Orange Street – Corporation Trust Center, City of Wilmington, County of New Castle, 19801. The name of its registered agent at such address is The Corporation Trust Company.

**ARTICLE IV  
CAPITALIZATION**

**Section 4.1 Authorized Capital Stock.** The total number of shares of all classes of capital stock, each with a par value of \$0.0001 per share, which the Corporation is authorized to issue is 221,000,000 shares, consisting of (a) 220,000,000 shares of common stock (the “**Common Stock**”), including (i) 200,000,000 shares of Class A Common Stock (the “**Class A Common Stock**”) and (ii) 20,000,000 shares of Class B Common Stock (the “**Class B Common Stock**”), and (b) 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock (the “**Preferred Stock**”).

---

**Section 4.2 Preferred Stock.** Subject to *Article IX* of this Amended and Restated Certificate, the Board of Directors of the Corporation (the “**Board**”) is hereby expressly authorized to provide out of the unissued shares of the Preferred Stock for one or more series of Preferred Stock and to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series and to fix the voting rights, if any, designations, powers, preferences and relative, participating, optional, special and other rights, if any, of each such series and any qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, as shall be stated in the resolution or resolutions adopted by the Board providing for the issuance of such series and included in a certificate of designation (a “**Preferred Stock Designation**”) filed pursuant to the DGCL, and the Board is hereby expressly vested with the authority to the full extent provided by law, now or hereafter, to adopt any such resolution or resolutions.

**Section 4.3 Common Stock.**

(a) Voting.

(i) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of the Common Stock shall exclusively possess all voting power with respect to the Corporation.

(ii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to one vote for each such share on each matter properly submitted to the stockholders on which the holders of the Common Stock are entitled to vote.

(iii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), at any annual or special meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, holders of the Class A Common Stock and holders of the Class B Common Stock, voting together as a single class, shall have the exclusive right to vote for the election of directors and on all other matters properly submitted to a vote of the stockholders. Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), holders of shares of any series of Common Stock shall not be entitled to vote on any amendment to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any amendment to any Preferred Stock Designation) that relates solely to the terms of one or more outstanding series of Preferred Stock or other series of Common Stock if the holders of such affected series of Preferred Stock or Common Stock, as applicable, are entitled exclusively, either separately or together with the holders of one or more other such series, to vote thereon pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) or the DGCL.

(b) Class B Common Stock.

(i) Shares of Class B Common Stock shall be convertible into shares of Class A Common Stock on a one-for-one basis (the “**Initial Conversion Ratio**”) automatically upon the closing of the initial Business Combination.

(ii) Notwithstanding the Initial Conversion Ratio, in the case that additional shares of Class A Common Stock, or equity-linked securities (as defined below), are issued or deemed issued in excess of the amounts sold in the Corporation’s initial public offering of securities (the “**Offering**”) and related to the closing of the initial Business Combination, all issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock shall automatically convert into shares of Class A Common Stock at the time of the closing of the initial Business Combination at a ratio for which:

- the numerator shall be equal to the sum of (A) 20% of all shares of Class A Common Stock issued or issuable (upon the conversion or exercise of any equity-linked securities or otherwise), in each case by the Corporation, related to or in connection with the consummation of the initial Business Combination (excluding any securities issued or issuable to any seller to any seller in the initial Business Combination, and any private placement-equivalent units and their underlying securities issued to MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the “**Sponsor**”) or its affiliates upon conversion of loans to the Corporation) plus (B) the number of shares of Class B Common Stock issued and outstanding prior to the closing of the initial Business Combination; and
- the denominator shall be the number of shares of Class B Common Stock issued and outstanding prior to the closing of the initial Business Combination.

As used herein, the term “equity-linked securities” means any debt or equity securities of the Corporation that are convertible into, exercisable or exchangeable for Class A Common Stock issued in connection with the initial Business Combination, including but not limited to a private placement of equity or debt.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, (i) the foregoing adjustment to the Initial Conversion Ratio may be waived as to any particular issuance or deemed issuance of additional shares of Class A Common Stock or equity-linked securities by the written consent or agreement of holders of a majority of the shares of Class B Common Stock then outstanding consenting or agreeing separately as a single class in the manner provided in Section 4.3(b)(iii), and (ii) in no event shall the Class B Common Stock convert into Class A Common Stock at a ratio that is less than one-for-one.

The foregoing conversion ratio shall also be adjusted to account for any subdivision (by stock split, subdivision, exchange, stock dividend, reclassification, recapitalization or otherwise) or combination (by reverse stock split, exchange, reclassification, recapitalization or otherwise) or similar reclassification or recapitalization of the outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock into a greater or lesser number of shares occurring after the original filing of this Amended and Restated Certificate without a proportionate and corresponding subdivision, combination or similar reclassification or recapitalization of the outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock.

Each share of Class B Common Stock shall convert into its *pro rata* number of shares of Class A Common Stock pursuant to this Section 4.3(b). The *pro rata* share for each holder of Class B Common Stock will be determined as follows: Each share of Class B Common Stock shall convert into such number of shares of Class A Common Stock as is equal to the product of one (1) multiplied by a fraction, the numerator of which shall be the total number of shares of Class A Common Stock into which all of the issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock shall be converted pursuant to this Section 4.3(b) and the denominator of which shall be the total number of issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock at the time of conversion.

(iii) *Voting*. Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation and Section 9.9 hereof), for so long as any shares of Class B Common Stock shall remain outstanding, the Corporation shall not, without the prior vote or written consent of the holders of a majority of the shares of Class B Common Stock then outstanding, voting separately as a single class, amend, alter or repeal any provision of this Amended and Restated Certificate, whether by merger, consolidation or otherwise, if such amendment, alteration or repeal would alter or change the powers, preferences or relative, participating, optional or other or special rights of the Class B Common Stock. Any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of the holders of Class B Common Stock may be taken without a meeting, without prior notice and without a vote, if a consent or consents in writing, setting forth the action so taken, shall be signed by the holders of the outstanding Class B Common Stock having not less than the minimum number of votes that would be necessary to authorize or take such action at a meeting at which all shares of Class B Common Stock were present and voted and shall be delivered to the Corporation by delivery to its registered office in the State of Delaware, its principal place of business, or an officer or agent of the Corporation having custody of the book in which minutes of proceedings of stockholders are recorded. Delivery made to the Corporation’s registered office shall be by hand or by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested. Prompt written notice of the taking of corporate action without a meeting by less than unanimous written consent of the holders of Class B Common Stock shall, to the extent required by law, be given to those holders of Class B Common Stock who have not consented in writing and who, if the action had been taken at a meeting, would have been entitled to notice of the meeting if the record date for notice of such meeting had been the date that written consents signed by a sufficient number of holders of Class B Common Stock to take the action were delivered to the Corporation.

(c) *Dividends*. Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock and the provisions of *Article IX* hereof, the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive such dividends and other distributions (payable in cash, property or capital stock of the Corporation) when, as and if declared thereon by the Board from time to time out of any assets or funds of the Corporation legally available therefor and shall share equally on a per share basis in such dividends and distributions.

(d) *Liquidation, Dissolution or Winding Up of the Corporation*. Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock and the provisions of *Article IX* hereof, in the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Corporation, after payment or provision for payment of the debts and other liabilities of the Corporation, the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive all the remaining assets of the Corporation available for distribution to its stockholders, ratably in proportion to the number of shares of Class A Common Stock (on an as converted basis with respect to the Class B Common Stock) held by them.

**Section 4.4 Rights and Options**. The Corporation has the authority to create and issue rights, warrants and options entitling the holders thereof to acquire from the Corporation any shares of its capital stock of any class or classes, with such rights, warrants and options to be evidenced by or in instrument(s) approved by the Board. The Board is empowered to set the exercise price, duration, times for exercise and other terms and conditions of such rights, warrants or options; provided, however, that the consideration to be received for any shares of capital stock issuable upon exercise thereof may not be less than the par value thereof.

## **ARTICLE V BOARD OF DIRECTORS**

**Section 5.1 Board Powers**. The business and affairs of the Corporation shall be managed by, or under the direction of, the Board. In addition to the powers and authority expressly conferred upon the Board by statute, this Amended and Restated Certificate or the Bylaws of the Corporation then in effect (the "**Bylaws**"), the Board is hereby empowered to exercise all such powers and do all such acts and things as may be exercised or done by the Corporation, subject, nevertheless, to the provisions of the DGCL, this Amended and Restated Certificate, and any Bylaws adopted by the stockholders of the Corporation; provided, however, that no Bylaws hereafter adopted by the stockholders of the Corporation shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such Bylaws had not been adopted.

**Section 5.2 Number, Election and Term**.

(a) The number of directors of the Corporation, other than those who may be elected by the holders of one or more series of the Preferred Stock voting separately by class or series, shall be fixed from time to time exclusively by the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board.

(b) Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, the Board shall be divided into three classes, as nearly equal in number as possible and designated Class I, Class II and Class III. The term of the initial Class I Directors shall expire at the first annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate; the term of the initial Class II Directors shall expire at the second annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate; and the term of the initial Class III Directors shall expire at the third annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate. At each succeeding annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, beginning with the first annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate, each of the successors elected to the class of directors whose term expires at that annual meeting shall be elected for a three-year term or until the election and qualification of their respective successors in office, subject to their earlier death, resignation or removal. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, if the number of directors that constitutes the Board is changed, any increase or decrease shall be apportioned by the Board among the classes so as to maintain the number of directors in each class as nearly equal as possible, but in no case shall a decrease in the number of directors constituting the Board shorten the term of any incumbent director. Subject to any contractual rights of stockholders, in accordance with the DGCL, or the rights of the holders of one or more series of Preferred Stock, voting separately by class or series, to elect directors pursuant to the terms of one or more series of Preferred Stock, the election of directors shall be determined by a plurality of the votes cast by the stockholders present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote thereon. The Board is hereby expressly authorized, by resolution or resolutions thereof, to assign members of the Board already in office to the aforesaid classes at the time this Amended and Restated Certificate (and therefore such classification) becomes effective in accordance with the DGCL.

(c) Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, a director shall hold office until the annual meeting for the year in which his or her term expires and until his or her successor has been elected and qualified, subject, however, to such director's earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal.

(d) Unless and except to the extent that the Bylaws shall so require, the election of directors need not be by written ballot. The holders of shares of Common Stock shall not have cumulative voting rights.

**Section 5.3 Newly Created Directorships and Vacancies.** Subject to Section 5.5 hereof and the contractual rights of any stockholder, in accordance with the DGCL, newly created directorships resulting from an increase in the number of directors and any vacancies on the Board resulting from death, resignation, retirement, disqualification, removal or other cause may be filled solely and exclusively by a majority vote of the remaining directors then in office, even if less than a quorum, or by a sole remaining director (and not by stockholders), and any director so chosen shall hold office for the remainder of the full term of the class of directors to which the new directorship was added or in which the vacancy occurred and until his or her successor has been elected and qualified, subject, however, to such director's earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal.

**Section 5.4 Removal.** Subject to Section 5.5 hereof and the contractual rights of any stockholder, in accordance with the DGCL, any or all of the directors may be removed from office at any time, but only for cause and only by the affirmative vote of holders of a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class.

**Section 5.5 Preferred Stock - Directors.** Notwithstanding any other provision of this *Article V*, and except as otherwise required by law, whenever the holders of one or more series of the Preferred Stock shall have the right, voting separately by class or series, to elect one or more directors, the term of office, the filling of vacancies, the removal from office and other features of such directorships shall be governed by the terms of such series of the Preferred Stock as set forth in this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) and such directors shall not be included in any of the classes created pursuant to this *Article V* unless expressly provided by such terms.



**ARTICLE VI  
BYLAWS**

In furtherance and not in limitation of the powers conferred upon it by law, the Board shall have the power and is expressly authorized to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the Bylaws. The affirmative vote of a majority of the Board shall be required to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the Bylaws. The Bylaws also may be adopted, amended, altered or repealed by the stockholders; provided, however, that in addition to any vote of the holders of any class or series of capital stock of the Corporation required by law or by this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the affirmative vote of the holders of at least a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, shall be required for the stockholders to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the Bylaws; and provided further, however, that no Bylaws hereafter adopted by the stockholders shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such Bylaws had not been adopted.

**ARTICLE VII  
MEETINGS OF STOCKHOLDERS; ACTION BY WRITTEN CONSENT**

**Section 7.1 Special Meetings.** Subject to the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock, and to the requirements of applicable law, special meetings of stockholders of the Corporation may be called only by the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation, or the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board, and the ability of the stockholders of the Corporation to call a special meeting is hereby specifically denied. Except as provided in the foregoing sentence, special meetings of stockholders of the Corporation may not be called by another person or persons.

**Section 7.2 Advance Notice.** Advance notice of stockholder nominations for the election of directors and of business to be brought by stockholders before any meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation shall be given in the manner provided in the Bylaws.

**Section 7.3 Action by Written Consent.** Except as may be otherwise provided for or fixed pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) relating to the rights of the holders of any outstanding series of Preferred Stock, subsequent to the consummation of the Offering, any action required or permitted to be taken by the stockholders of the Corporation must be effected by a duly called annual or special meeting of such stockholders and may not be effected by written consent of the stockholders other than with respect to Class B Common Stock with respect to which action may be taken by written consent.

**ARTICLE VIII  
LIMITED LIABILITY; INDEMNIFICATION**

**Section 8.1 Limitation of Director Liability.** A director of the Corporation shall not be personally liable to the Corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except to the extent such exemption from liability or limitation thereof is not permitted under the DGCL as the same exists or may hereafter be amended. Any amendment, modification or repeal of the foregoing sentence shall not adversely affect any right or protection of a director of the Corporation hereunder in respect of any act or omission occurring prior to the time of such amendment, modification or repeal.

**Section 8.2 Indemnification and Advancement of Expenses.**

(a) To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, as the same exists or may hereafter be amended, the Corporation shall indemnify and hold harmless each person who is or was made a party or is threatened to be made a party to or is otherwise involved in any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (a "**proceeding**") by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director or officer of the Corporation or, while a director or officer of the Corporation, is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust, other enterprise or nonprofit entity, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan (an "**indemnitee**"), whether the basis of such proceeding is alleged action in an official capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent, or in any other capacity while serving as a director, officer, employee or agent, against all liability and loss suffered and expenses (including, without limitation, attorneys' fees, judgments, fines, ERISA excise taxes and penalties and amounts paid in settlement) reasonably incurred by such indemnitee in connection with such proceeding. The Corporation shall to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law pay the expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an indemnitee in defending or otherwise participating in any proceeding in advance of its final disposition; provided, however, that, to the extent required by applicable law, such payment of expenses in advance of the final disposition of the proceeding shall be made only upon receipt of an undertaking, by or on behalf of the indemnitee, to repay all amounts so advanced if it shall ultimately be determined that the indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified under this Section 8.2 or otherwise. The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses conferred by this Section 8.2 shall be contract rights and such rights shall continue as to an indemnitee who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of his or her heirs, executors and administrators. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 8.2(a), except for proceedings to enforce rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses, the Corporation shall indemnify and advance expenses to an indemnitee in connection with a proceeding (or part thereof) initiated by such indemnitee only if such proceeding (or part thereof) was authorized by the Board.

(b) The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses conferred on any indemnitee by this Section 8.2 shall not be exclusive of any other rights that any indemnitee may have or hereafter acquire under law, this Amended and Restated Certificate, the Bylaws, an agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise.

(c) Any repeal or amendment of this Section 8.2 by the stockholders of the Corporation or by changes in law, or the adoption of any other provision of this Amended and Restated Certificate inconsistent with this Section 8.2, shall, unless otherwise required by law, be prospective only (except to the extent such amendment or change in law permits the Corporation to provide broader indemnification rights on a retroactive basis than permitted prior thereto), and shall not in any way diminish or adversely affect any right or protection existing at the time of such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision in respect of any proceeding (regardless of when such proceeding is first threatened, commenced or completed) arising out of, or related to, any act or omission occurring prior to such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision.

(d) This Section 8.2 shall not limit the right of the Corporation, to the extent and in the manner authorized or permitted by law, to indemnify and to advance expenses to persons other than indemnitees.

## ARTICLE IX BUSINESS COMBINATION REQUIREMENTS; EXISTENCE

### **Section 9.1 General.**

(a) The provisions of this *Article IX* shall apply during the period commencing upon the effectiveness of this Amended and Restated Certificate and terminating upon the consummation of the Corporation's initial Business Combination and no amendment to this *Article IX* shall be effective prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination unless approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least sixty-five percent (65%) of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock.

(b) Immediately after the Offering, a certain amount of the net offering proceeds received by the Corporation in the Offering (including the proceeds of any exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option) and certain other amounts specified in the Corporation's registration statement on Form S-1, as initially filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**SEC**") on February 1, 2021, as amended (the "**Registration Statement**"), shall be deposited in a trust account (the "**Trust Account**"), established for the benefit of the Public Stockholders (as defined below) pursuant to a trust agreement described in the Registration Statement. Except for the withdrawal of interest income (if any) to pay the Corporation's taxes, if any, none of the funds held in the Trust Account (including the interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account) will be released from the Trust Account until the earliest to occur of (i) the completion of the initial Business Combination, (ii) the redemption of 100% of the Offering Shares (as defined below) if the Corporation does not complete its initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering, subject to applicable law, and (iii) the redemption of Offering Shares in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to this Amended and Restated Certificate that (A) would affect the substance or timing of the Corporation's obligation to allow redemption in connection with the initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Corporation has not completed an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering or (B) with respect to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity (as described in Section 9.7). Holders of shares of the Common Stock included as part of the units sold in the Offering (the "**Offering Shares**") (whether such Offering Shares were purchased in the Offering or in the secondary market following the Offering and whether or not such holders are the Sponsor or officers or directors of the Corporation, or any affiliates of any of the foregoing) are referred to herein as "**Public Stockholders.**"

## **Section 9.2 Redemption Rights.**

(a) Prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall provide all holders of Offering Shares with the opportunity to have their Offering Shares redeemed upon the consummation of the initial Business Combination pursuant to, and subject to the limitations of, Sections 9.2(b) and 9.2(c) (such rights of such holders to have their Offering Shares redeemed pursuant to such Sections, the “**Redemption Rights**”) hereof for cash equal to the applicable redemption price per share determined in accordance with Section 9.2(b) hereof (the “**Redemption Price**”); provided, however, that the Corporation shall not redeem Offering Shares to the extent that such redemption would result in the Corporation’s failure to have net tangible assets (as determined in accordance with Rule 3a51-1(g)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”) (or any successor rule)) of at least \$5,000,001 or any greater net tangible asset or cash requirement which may be contained in the agreement relating to the initial Business Combination (such limitation hereinafter called the “**Redemption Limitation**”). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Amended and Restated Certificate, there shall be no Redemption Rights or liquidating distributions with respect to any warrant issued pursuant to the Offering.

(b) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares other than in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination with a proxy solicitation pursuant to Regulation 14A of the Exchange Act (or any successor rules or regulations) and filing proxy materials with the SEC, the Corporation shall offer to redeem the Offering Shares upon the consummation of the initial Business Combination, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.2(a) hereof, pursuant to a tender offer in accordance with Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule or regulation) (such rules and regulations hereinafter called the “**Tender Offer Rules**”) which it shall commence prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination and shall file tender offer documents with the SEC prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination that contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial Business Combination and the Redemption Rights as is required under Regulation 14A of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule or regulation) (such rules and regulations hereinafter called the “**Proxy Solicitation Rules**”), even if such information is not required under the Tender Offer Rules; provided, however, that if a stockholder vote is required by law to approve the proposed initial Business Combination, or the Corporation decides to submit the proposed initial Business Combination to the stockholders for their approval for business or other legal reasons, the Corporation shall offer to redeem the Offering Shares, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.2(a) hereof, in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the Proxy Solicitation Rules (and not the Tender Offer Rules) at a price per share equal to the Redemption Price calculated in accordance with the following provisions of this Section 9.2(b). In the event that the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares pursuant to a tender offer in accordance with the Tender Offer Rules, the Redemption Price per share of the Common Stock payable to holders of the Offering Shares tendering their Offering Shares pursuant to such tender offer shall be equal to the quotient obtained by dividing: (i) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account calculated as of two business days prior to the completion of the initial Business Combination, including interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Corporation to pay its taxes by (ii) the number of the then outstanding Offering Shares. If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on the proposed initial Business Combination pursuant to a proxy solicitation, the Redemption Price per share of the Common Stock payable to holders of the Offering Shares exercising their Redemption Rights shall be equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (a) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account calculated as of two business days prior to the completion of the initial Business Combination, including interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Corporation to pay its taxes by (b) the number of the then outstanding Offering Shares.

(c) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination pursuant to a proxy solicitation, a Public Stockholder, together with any affiliate of such stockholder or any other person with whom such stockholder is acting in concert or as a “group” (as defined under Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), shall be restricted from seeking Redemption Rights with respect to more than an aggregate of 15% of the Offering Shares without the prior consent of the Corporation.

(d) In the event that the Corporation has not completed an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering, the Corporation shall (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but no more than ten business days thereafter subject to lawfully available funds therefor, redeem the Offering Shares, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable, and less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), divided by the number of the then outstanding Offering Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish rights of the Public Stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the remaining stockholders and the Board in accordance with applicable law, liquidate and dissolve, subject in each case to the Corporation’s obligations under the DGCL to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law.

(e) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall consummate the proposed initial Business Combination only if (i) such initial Business Combination is approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of the Common Stock that are voted at a stockholder meeting held to consider such initial Business Combination and (ii) the Redemption Limitation is not exceeded.

(f) If the Corporation conducts a tender offer pursuant to Section 9.2(b), the Corporation shall consummate the proposed initial Business Combination only if the Redemption Limitation is not exceeded.

### **Section 9.3 Distributions from the Trust Account.**

(a) A Public Stockholder shall be entitled to receive funds from the Trust Account only as provided in Sections 9.2(a), 9.2(b), 9.2(d) or 9.7 hereof. In no other circumstances shall a Public Stockholder have any right or interest of any kind in or to distributions from the Trust Account, and no stockholder other than a Public Stockholder shall have any interest in or to the Trust Account.

(b) Each Public Stockholder that does not exercise its Redemption Rights shall retain its interest in the Corporation and shall be deemed to have given its consent to the release of the remaining funds in the Trust Account to the Corporation, and following payment to any Public Stockholders exercising their Redemption Rights, the remaining funds in the Trust Account shall be released to the Corporation.

(c) The exercise by a Public Stockholder of the Redemption Rights shall be conditioned on such Public Stockholder following the specific procedures for redemptions set forth by the Corporation in any applicable tender offer or proxy materials sent to the Public Stockholders relating to the proposed initial Business Combination, including the requirement that any Public Stockholder that holds Offering Shares beneficially through a nominee must identify itself to the Corporation in connection with any redemption election in order to validly redeem such Offering Shares. Holders of Offering Shares seeking to exercise their Redemption Rights may be required to either tender their certificates (if any) to the Corporation’s transfer agent or to deliver their shares to the transfer agent electronically using The Depository Trust Company’s DWAC (Deposit/Withdrawal At Custodian) System, at the holder’s option, in each case up to two business days prior to the originally scheduled vote on the proposal to approve a Business Combination. Payment of the amounts necessary to satisfy the Redemption Rights properly exercised shall be made as promptly as practical after the consummation of the initial Business Combination.

**Section 9.4 Share Issuances.** Prior to or in connection with the consummation of the Corporation’s initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall not issue any additional securities of the Corporation that would entitle the holders thereof to (i) receive funds from the Trust Account or (ii) vote on the Corporation’s initial Business Combination or any other proposal presented to the stockholders prior to or in connection with the completion of an initial Business Combination.

**Section 9.5 Transactions with Affiliates.** In the event the Corporation seeks to complete its initial Business Combination with a business combination target that is affiliated with the Sponsor, or the executive officers or directors of the Corporation, the Corporation, or a committee of independent directors of the Corporation, shall obtain an opinion from an independent investment banking firm which is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority or an independent accounting firm, that such initial Business Combination is fair to the Corporation from a financial point of view.

**Section 9.6 No Transactions with Other Blank Check Companies.** The Corporation shall not enter into an initial Business Combination with another blank check company or a similar company with nominal operations.

**Section 9.7 Additional Redemption Rights.** If, in accordance with Section 9.1(a), any amendment is made to Section 9.2(d) that would affect the substance or timing of the Corporation's obligation to allow redemption in connection with the Corporation's initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Corporation does not complete an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering or with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity, the Public Stockholders shall be provided with the opportunity to redeem their Offering Shares upon approval of any such amendment, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Corporation to pay its taxes, divided by the number of the then outstanding Offering Shares; provided, however, that any such amendment will be voided, and this *Article IX* will remain unchanged, if any stockholders who wish to redeem are unable to redeem due to the Redemption Limitation.

**Section 9.8 Appointment and Removal of Directors.** Notwithstanding any other provision in this Amended and Restated Certificate, prior to the closing of the initial Business Combination, the holders of Class B Common Stock shall have the exclusive right to elect, remove and replace any director, and the holders of Class A Common Stock shall have no right to vote on the election, removal or replacement of any director. This Section 9.8 may only be amended by a resolution passed by holders of a majority of the shares of outstanding Class B Common Stock.

**Section 9.9 Minimum Value of Target.** The Corporation's initial Business Combination must occur with one or more target businesses that together have an aggregate fair market value of at least 80% of the net assets held in the Trust Account (excluding the amount of deferred underwriting discounts held in trust and taxes payable on the interest earned on the Trust Account) at the time of the agreement to enter into the initial Business Combination.

**Section 9.10 Approval of Business Combination.** Notwithstanding any other provision in this Amended and Restated Certificate, approval of the initial Business Combination shall require the affirmative vote of a majority of the Board, which must include a majority of the Corporation's independent directors.

## ARTICLE X CORPORATE OPPORTUNITY

To the extent allowed by law, the doctrine of corporate opportunity, or any other analogous doctrine, shall not apply with respect to the Corporation or any of its officers or directors, or any of their respective affiliates, in circumstances where the application of any such doctrine would conflict with any fiduciary duties or contractual obligations they may have as of the date of this Amended and Restated Certificate or in the future, and the Corporation renounces any expectancy that any of the directors or officers of the Corporation will offer any such corporate opportunity of which he or she may become aware to the Corporation, except, the doctrine of corporate opportunity shall apply with respect to any of the directors or officers of the Corporation only with respect to a corporate opportunity that was offered to such person solely in his or her capacity as a director or officer of the Corporation and (i) such opportunity is one the Corporation is legally and contractually permitted to undertake and would otherwise be reasonable for the Corporation to pursue and (ii) the director or officer is permitted to refer that opportunity to the Corporation without violating any legal obligation.

**ARTICLE XI**  
**AMENDMENT OF AMENDED AND RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION**

The Corporation reserves the right at any time and from time to time to amend, alter, change or repeal any provision contained in this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), and other provisions authorized by the laws of the State of Delaware at the time in force that may be added or inserted, in the manner now or hereafter prescribed by this Amended and Restated Certificate and the DGCL; and, except as set forth in *Article VIII*, all rights, preferences and privileges of whatever nature herein conferred upon stockholders, directors or any other persons by and pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate in its present form or as hereafter amended are granted subject to the right reserved in this *Article XI*; provided, however, that *Article IX* of this Amended and Restated Certificate may be amended only as provided therein.

**ARTICLE XII**  
**EXCLUSIVE FORUM FOR CERTAIN LAWSUITS**

**Section 12.1 Forum.** Unless the Corporation consents in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware shall be the sole and exclusive forum for any stockholder (including a beneficial owner) to bring (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on behalf of the Corporation, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee of the Corporation to the Corporation or the Corporation's stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against the Corporation, its directors, officers or employees arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or this Amended and Restated Certificate or the Bylaws, or (iv) any action asserting a claim against the Corporation, its directors, officers or employees governed by the internal affairs doctrine, except for, as to each of (i) through (iv) above, any claim as to which the Court of Chancery determines that there is an indispensable party not subject to the jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery (and the indispensable party does not consent to the personal jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery within ten days following such determination), which is vested in the exclusive jurisdiction of a court or forum other than the Court of Chancery, or for which the Court of Chancery does not have subject matter jurisdiction. This exclusive forum provision will not apply to suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Exchange Act, the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction. Section 27 of the Exchange Act creates exclusive federal jurisdiction over all suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or the rules and regulations thereunder and Section 22 of the Securities Act creates concurrent jurisdiction for federal and state courts over all suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Securities Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. As a result, the exclusive forum provision will not apply to suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Exchange Act, the Securities Act, or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction.

**Section 12.2 Consent to Jurisdiction.** If any action the subject matter of which is within the scope of Section 12.1 is filed in a court other than a court located within the State of Delaware (a "**Foreign Action**") in the name of any stockholder, such stockholder shall be deemed to have consented to (i) the personal jurisdiction of the state and federal courts located within the State of Delaware in connection with any action brought in any such court to enforce Section 12.1 (an "**FSC Enforcement Action**") and (ii) having service of process made upon such stockholder in any such FSC Enforcement Action by service upon such stockholder's counsel in the Foreign Action as agent for such stockholder.

**Section 12.3 Severability.** If any provision or provisions of this *Article XII* shall be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable as applied to any person or entity or circumstance for any reason whatsoever, then, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the validity, legality and enforceability of such provisions in any other circumstance and of the remaining provisions of this *Article XII* (including, without limitation, each portion of any sentence of this *Article XII* containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable that is not itself held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable) and the application of such provision to other persons or entities and circumstances shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby. Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in shares of capital stock of the Corporation shall be deemed to have notice of and consented to the provisions of this *Article XII*.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, MCAP Acquisition Corporation has caused this Amended and Restated Certificate to be duly executed and acknowledged in its name and on its behalf by an authorized officer as of the date first set forth above.

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Theodore L. Koenig

Name: Theodore L. Koenig

Title: Chief Financial Officer

[Signature Page to Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation]

---

## WARRANT AGREEMENT

THIS WARRANT AGREEMENT (this “**Agreement**”), dated as of February 25, 2021, is by and between MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York limited purpose trust company, as warrant agent (the “**Warrant Agent**” and, in its capacity as transfer agent, referred to herein as the “**Transfer Agent**”).

WHEREAS, on February 25, 2021, the Company entered into that certain Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement with MCAP Acquisition, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Sponsor**”), pursuant to which the Sponsor agreed to purchase an aggregate of 5,433,333 warrants (or 5,983,333 warrants if the Over-allotment Option (as defined below) in connection with the Company’s Offering (as defined below) is exercised in full) simultaneously with the closing of the Offering (and the closing of the Over-allotment Option, if applicable) bearing the legend set forth in Exhibit B hereto (the “**Private Placement Warrants**”) at a purchase price of \$1.50 per Private Placement Warrant. Each Private Placement Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock (as defined below) at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as described herein;

WHEREAS, in order to finance the Company’s transaction costs in connection with an intended initial merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses (a “**Business Combination**”), the Sponsor or an affiliate of the Sponsor or certain of the Company’s officers and directors may, but are not obligated to, loan the Company funds as the Company may require, of which up to \$1,500,000 may be convertible into up to an additional 1,000,000 Private Placement Warrants at a price of \$1.50 per Private Placement Warrant;

WHEREAS, the Company is engaged in an initial public offering (the “**Offering**”) of units of the Company’s equity securities, each such unit comprised of one share of Class A common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (“**Common Stock**”), and one-third of one redeemable Public Warrant (as defined below) (the “**Units**”) and, in connection therewith, has determined to issue and deliver 9,166,666 warrants (or up to 10,541,666 warrants if the Over-allotment Option is exercised in full) to public investors in the Offering (the “**Public Warrants**” and, together with the Private Placement Warrants, the “**Warrants**”). Each whole Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock for \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as described herein. Only whole Warrants are exercisable. A holder of the Public Warrants will not be able to exercise any fraction of a Warrant;

WHEREAS, the Company has filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) a registration statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-252607) and a prospectus (the “**Prospectus**”), for the registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), of the Units, the Public Warrants and the Common Stock included in the Units;

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing to so act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, redemption and exercise of the Warrants;

WHEREAS, the Company desires to provide for the form and provisions of the Warrants, the terms upon which they shall be issued and exercised, and the respective rights, limitation of rights, and immunities of the Company, the Warrant Agent, and the holders of the Warrants; and

WHEREAS, all acts and things have been done and performed which are necessary to make the Warrants, when executed on behalf of the Company and countersigned by or on behalf of the Warrant Agent (if a physical certificate is issued), as provided herein, the valid, binding and legal obligations of the Company, and to authorize the execution and delivery of this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:



1. Appointment of Warrant Agent.

The Company hereby appoints the Warrant Agent to act as agent for the Company for the Warrants, and the Warrant Agent hereby accepts such appointment and agrees to perform the same in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.

2. Warrants.

2.1 Form of Warrant. Each Warrant shall initially be issued in registered form only.

2.2 Effect of Countersignature. If a physical certificate is issued, unless and until countersigned by the Warrant Agent pursuant to this Agreement, a Warrant certificate shall be invalid and of no effect and may not be exercised by the holder thereof.

2.3 Registration.

2.3.1 Warrant Register. The Warrant Agent shall maintain books (the “**Warrant Register**”) for the registration of original issuance and the registration of transfer of the Warrants. Upon the initial issuance of the Warrants in book entry form, the Warrant Agent shall issue and register the Warrants in the names of the respective holders thereof in such denominations and otherwise in accordance with instructions delivered to the Warrant Agent by the Company. Ownership of beneficial interests in the Public Warrants shall be shown on, and the transfer of such ownership shall be effected through, records maintained by institutions that have accounts with The Depository Trust Company (the “**Depository**”) (such institution, with respect to a Warrant in its account, a “**Participant**”).

If the Depository subsequently ceases to make its book-entry settlement system available for the Public Warrants, the Company may instruct the Warrant Agent regarding making other arrangements for book-entry settlement. In the event that the Public Warrants are not eligible for, or it is no longer necessary to have the Public Warrants available in, book-entry form, the Warrant Agent shall provide written instructions to the Depository to deliver to the Warrant Agent for cancellation each book-entry Public Warrant, and the Company shall instruct the Warrant Agent to deliver to the Depository definitive certificates in physical form evidencing such Warrants (“**Definitive Warrant Certificates**”) which shall be in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A.

Physical certificates, if issued, shall be signed by, or bear the facsimile signature of, the President, the Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, the Secretary or other principal officer of the Company. In the event the person whose facsimile signature has been placed upon any Warrant shall have ceased to serve in the capacity in which such person signed the Warrant before such Warrant is issued, it may be issued with the same effect as if he or she had not ceased to be such at the date of issuance.

2.3.2 Registered Holder. Prior to due presentment for registration of transfer of any Warrant, the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the person in whose name such Warrant is registered in the Warrant Register (the “**Registered Holder**”) as the absolute owner of such Warrant and of each Warrant represented thereby (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing on any physical certificate made by anyone other than the Company or the Warrant Agent), for the purpose of any exercise thereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

2.4 Detachability of Warrants. The Common Stock and Public Warrants comprising the Units shall begin separate trading on the 52nd day following the date of the Prospectus or, if such 52nd day is not on a day, other than a Saturday, Sunday or federal holiday, on which banks in New York City are generally open for normal business (a “**Business Day**”), then on the immediately succeeding Business Day following such date, or earlier (the “**Detachment Date**”) with the consent of Cowen and Company, LLC, as representative of the several underwriters, but in no event shall the Common Stock and the Public Warrants comprising the Units be separately traded until (A) the Company has filed a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Commission containing an audited balance sheet reflecting the receipt by the Company of the gross proceeds of the Offering, including the proceeds received by the Company from the exercise by the underwriters of their right to purchase additional Units in the Offering (the “**Over-allotment Option**”), if the Over-allotment Option is exercised prior to the filing of the Current Report on Form 8-K, and (B) the Company issues a press release announcing when such separate trading shall begin.

2.5 No Fractional Warrants Other Than as Part of Units. The Company shall not issue fractional Warrants other than as part of the Units, each of which is comprised of one share of Common Stock and one-third of one Public Warrant. If, upon the detachment of Public Warrants from the Units or otherwise, a holder of Warrants would be entitled to receive a fractional Warrant, the Company shall round down to the nearest whole number the number of Warrants to be issued to such holder.

2.6 Private Placement Warrants. The Private Placement Warrants shall be identical to the Public Warrants, except that so long as they are held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees (as defined below) the Private Placement Warrants: (i) may be exercised for cash or on a “cashless basis,” pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) hereof, (ii) may not be transferred, assigned or sold until the date that is thirty (30) days after the completion by the Company of an initial Business Combination, and (iii) shall not be redeemable by the Company; provided, however, that in the case of clause (ii), the Private Placement Warrants and any shares of Common Stock held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees that are issued upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants may be transferred by the holders thereof:

- (a) to the Company’s officers or directors, any affiliates or family members of any of the Company’s officers or directors, any affiliate of the Sponsor or any employees of such affiliates, or to any member(s) of the Sponsor or any affiliates of such members;
- (b) in the case of an individual, by gift to a member of such individual’s immediate family or to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of such individual’s immediate family, or an affiliate of such individual or to a charitable organization;
- (c) in the case of an individual, by virtue of the laws of descent and distribution upon death of such individual;
- (d) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order;
- (e) by private sales or transfers made in connection with the consummation of an initial Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the securities were originally purchased;
- (f) in the event of the Company’s liquidation prior to consummation of the Company’s initial Business Combination;
- (g) by virtue of the laws of the State of Delaware or the Sponsor’s limited liability company agreement upon dissolution of the Sponsor;
- (h) as distributions to direct or indirect members of the Sponsor;
- (i) to the Company for no value for cancellation in connection with the completion of its initial Business Combination; or
- (j) in the event of the Company’s liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction which results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property subsequent to the Company’s completion of its initial Business Combination;

provided, however, that, in each case (except for clauses (f), (i) or (j) or with the prior written consent of the Company) prior to such registration for transfer, the Warrant Agent shall be presented with written documentation pursuant to which any such transferee (the “**Permitted Transferees**”) must enter into a written agreement with the Company agreeing to be bound by the transfer restrictions in this Agreement.

3. Terms and Exercise of Warrants.

3.1 Warrant Price. Each Warrant shall entitle the Registered Holder thereof, subject to the provisions of such Warrant and of this Agreement, to purchase from the Company the number of shares of Common Stock stated therein, at the price of \$11.50 per share, subject to the adjustments provided in Section 4 hereof and in the last sentence of this Section 3.1. The term “**Warrant Price**” as used in this Agreement shall mean the price per share (including in cash or by payment of Warrants pursuant to a “cashless exercise,” to the extent permitted hereunder) at which shares of Common Stock may be purchased at the time a Warrant is exercised. The Company in its sole discretion may lower the Warrant Price (including by allowing “cashless exercise”) at any time prior to the Expiration Date (as defined below) for a period of not less than twenty (20) Business Days, provided, that the Company shall provide at least three (3) Business Days prior written notice of such reduction to Registered Holders of the Warrants and, provided further that any such reduction shall be identical among all of the Warrants.

3.2 Duration of Warrants. A Warrant may be exercised only during the period (the “**Exercise Period**”) (A) commencing on the later of: (i) the date that is thirty (30) days after the first date on which the Company completes a Business Combination, and (ii) the date that is twelve (12) months from the date of the closing of the Offering, and (B) terminating at 5:00 p.m., New York City time on the earliest to occur of (x) the date that is five (5) years after the date on which the Company completes its initial Business Combination, (y) the liquidation of the Company in accordance with the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as amended from time to time; or (z) other than with respect to the Private Placement Warrants then held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees, the Redemption Date (as defined below) as provided in Section 6.3 hereof (the “**Expiration Date**”); provided, however, that the exercise of any Warrant shall be subject to the satisfaction of any applicable conditions, as set forth in subsection 3.3.2 below, with respect to an effective registration statement or a valid exemption therefrom being available. Except with respect to the right to receive the Redemption Price (as defined below) (other than with respect to a Private Placement Warrant then held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees) in the event of a redemption (as set forth in Section 6 hereof), each Warrant (other than a Private Placement Warrant then held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees in the event of a redemption) not exercised on or before the Expiration Date shall become null and void, and all rights thereunder and all rights in respect thereof under this Agreement shall cease at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, on the Expiration Date. The Company in its sole discretion may extend the duration of the Warrants by delaying the Expiration Date; provided, that the Company shall provide at least twenty (20) days prior written notice of any such extension to Registered Holders of the Warrants and, provided further that any such extension shall be identical in duration among all the Warrants.

3.3 Exercise of Warrants.

3.3.1 Payment. Subject to the provisions of the Warrant and this Agreement, a Warrant may be exercised by the Registered Holder thereof by delivering to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust department (i) the Definitive Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants to be exercised, or, in the case of a Warrant represented by a book-entry, the Warrants to be exercised (the “**Book-Entry Warrants**”) on the records of the Depository to an account of the Warrant Agent at the Depository designated for such purposes in writing by the Warrant Agent to the Depository from time to time, (ii) an election to purchase (“**Election to Purchase**”) any share of Common Stock pursuant to the exercise of a Warrant, properly completed and executed by the Registered Holder on the reverse of the Definitive Warrant Certificate or, in the case of a Book-Entry Warrant, properly delivered by the Participant in accordance with the Depository’s procedures, and (iii) the payment in full of the Warrant Price for each share of Common Stock as to which the Warrant is exercised and any and all applicable taxes due in connection with the exercise of the Warrant, the exchange of the Warrant for the shares of Common Stock and the issuance of such shares of Common Stock, as follows:

- (a) in lawful money of the United States, in good certified check or wire payable to the Warrant Agent;
- (b) in the event of a redemption pursuant to Section 6.1 hereof in which the Company’s board of directors (the “**Board**”) has elected to require all holders of the Warrants to exercise such Warrants on a “cashless basis,” by surrendering the Warrants for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the lesser of (A) the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the “Fair Market Value” (as defined in this subsection 3.3.1(b)) over the Warrant Price by (y) the Fair Market Value and (B) 0.361. Solely for purposes of this subsection 3.3.1(b), Section 6.2 and Section 6.4, the “**Fair Market Value**” shall mean the average last reported sale price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of redemption is sent to the holders of the Warrants, pursuant to Section 6 hereof;

(c) with respect to any Private Placement Warrant, so long as such Private Placement Warrant is held by the Sponsor or a Permitted Transferee, by surrendering the Warrants for that number of shares of Common Stock equal (i) if in connection with a redemption of Private Placement Warrants pursuant to Section 6.2 hereof, as provided in Section 6.2 hereof with respect to a Make-Whole Exercise (as defined below) and (ii) in all other scenarios, to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the “Sponsor Exercise Fair Market Value”, as defined in this subsection 3.3.1(c), over the Warrant Price by (y) the Sponsor Exercise Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 3.3.1(c), the “**Sponsor Exercise Fair Market Value**” shall mean the average last reported sale price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which notice of exercise of the Private Placement Warrant is sent to the Warrant Agent;

(d) on a cashless basis, as provided in Section 6.2 hereof with respect to a Make-Whole Exercise; or

(e) on a cashless basis, as provided in Section 7.4 hereof.

3.3.2 Issuance of Shares of Common Stock upon Exercise. As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant and the clearance of the funds in payment of the Warrant Price (if payment is pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(a)), the Company shall issue to the Registered Holder of such Warrant a book-entry position or certificate, as applicable, for the number of full shares of Common Stock to which he, she or it is entitled, registered in such name or names as may be directed by him, her or it, and if such Warrant shall not have been exercised in full, a new book-entry position or countersigned Warrant, as applicable, for the number of shares of Common Stock as to which such Warrant shall not have been exercised. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall not be obligated to deliver any shares of Common Stock pursuant to the exercise of a Warrant and shall have no obligation to settle such Warrant exercise unless (a) a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of Common Stock underlying the Public Warrants is then effective and (b) a prospectus relating thereto is current, subject to the Company’s satisfying its obligations under Section 7.4 or a valid exemption from registration being available. No Warrant shall be exercisable and the Company shall not be obligated to issue shares of Common Stock upon exercise of a Warrant unless the Common Stock issuable upon such Warrant exercise has been registered, qualified or deemed to be exempt from registration or qualification under the securities laws of the state of residence of the Registered Holder of the Warrants. Subject to Section 4.6 of this Agreement, a Registered Holder of Public Warrants may exercise its Public Warrants only for a whole number of shares of Common Stock. The Company may require holders of Public Warrants to settle the Warrant on a “cashless basis” pursuant to Section 7.4. If, by reason of any exercise of Warrants on a “cashless basis”, the holder of any Warrant would be entitled, upon the exercise of such Warrant, to receive a fractional interest in a share of Common Stock, the Company shall round down to the nearest whole number, the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such holder.

3.3.3 Valid Issuance. All shares of Common Stock issued upon the proper exercise of a Warrant in conformity with this Agreement shall be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

3.3.4 Date of Issuance. Each person in whose name any book-entry position or certificate, as applicable, for shares of Common Stock is issued shall for all purposes be deemed to have become the holder of record of such shares of Common Stock on the date on which the Warrant, or book-entry position representing such Warrant, was surrendered and payment of the Warrant Price was made, irrespective of the date of delivery of such certificate in the case of a certificated Warrant, except that, if the date of such surrender and payment is a date when the share transfer books of the Company or book-entry system of the Warrant Agent are closed, such person shall be deemed to have become the holder of such shares of Common Stock at the close of business on the next succeeding date on which the share transfer books or book-entry system are open.

3.3.5 Maximum Percentage. A holder of a Warrant may notify the Company in writing in the event he, she or it elects to be subject to the provisions contained in this subsection 3.3.5; however, no holder of a Warrant shall be subject to this subsection 3.3.5 unless he, she or it makes such election. If the election is made by a holder, the Warrant Agent shall not effect the exercise of the holder's Warrant, and such holder shall not have the right to exercise such Warrant, to the extent that after giving effect to such exercise, such person (together with such person's affiliates), to the Warrant Agent's actual knowledge, would beneficially own in excess of 9.8% (or such other amount as a holder may specify) (the "**Maximum Percentage**") of the shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to such exercise. For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by such person and his, her or its affiliates or any such other person or group shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrant with respect to which the determination of such sentence is being made, but shall exclude shares of Common Stock that would be issuable upon (x) exercise of the remaining, unexercised portion of the Warrant beneficially owned by such person and his, her or its affiliates and (y) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or unconverted portion of any other securities of the Company beneficially owned by such person and his, her or its affiliates (including, without limitation, any convertible notes or convertible preferred stock or warrants) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this paragraph, beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act**"). For purposes of the Warrant, in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, the holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (1) the Company's most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, Current Report on Form 8-K or other public filing with the Commission as the case may be, (2) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (3) any other notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. For any reason at any time, upon the written request of the holder of the Warrant, the Company shall, within two (2) Business Days, confirm orally and in writing to such holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of equity securities of the Company by the holder and his, her or its affiliates since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. By written notice to the Company, the holder of a Warrant may from time to time increase or decrease the Maximum Percentage applicable to such holder to any other percentage specified in such notice; provided, however, that any such increase shall not be effective until the sixty-first (61st) day after such notice is delivered to the Company.

#### 4. Adjustments.

##### 4.1 Stock Dividends.

4.1.1 Split-Ups. If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 4.6 below, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is increased by a stock capitalization or stock dividend payable in shares of Common Stock, or by a split-up of shares of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such stock capitalization or stock dividend, split-up or similar event, the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant shall be increased in proportion to such increase in the outstanding shares of Common Stock. A rights offering to holders of the Common Stock entitling holders to purchase shares of Common Stock at a price less than the "Historical Fair Market Value" (as defined below) shall be deemed a stock dividend of a number of shares of Common Stock equal to the product of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock actually sold in such rights offering (or issuable under any other equity securities sold in such rights offering that are convertible into or exercisable for the Common Stock) and (ii) one (1) minus the quotient of (x) the price per share of Common Stock paid in such rights offering divided by (y) the Historical Fair Market Value. For purposes of this subsection 4.1.1, (i) if the rights offering is for securities convertible into or exercisable for Common Stock, in determining the price payable for Common Stock, there shall be taken into account any consideration received for such rights, as well as any additional amount payable upon exercise or conversion and (ii) "**Historical Fair Market Value**" means the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the first date on which the shares of Common Stock trade on the applicable exchange or in the applicable market, regular way, without the right to receive such rights. No shares of Common Stock shall be issued at less than their par value.

4.1.2 Extraordinary Dividends. If the Company, at any time while the Warrants are outstanding and unexpired, shall pay a dividend or make a distribution in cash, securities or other assets to all or substantially all of the holders of the Common Stock on account of such shares of Common Stock (or other shares of the Company's capital stock into which the Warrants are convertible), other than (a) as described in subsection 4.1.1 above, (b) Ordinary Cash Dividends (as defined below), (c) to satisfy the redemption rights of the holders of the Common Stock in connection with a proposed initial Business Combination, (d) to satisfy the redemption rights of the holders of Common Stock in connection with a stockholder vote to amend the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation to (i) modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to allow redemption in connection with the Company's initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold in the Offering if the Company does not complete its initial Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as amended from time to time or (ii) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity or (e) in connection with the redemption of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold in the Offering upon the failure of the Company to complete its initial Business Combination and any subsequent distribution of its assets upon its liquidation (any such non-excluded event being referred to herein as an "**Extraordinary Dividend**"), then the Warrant Price shall be decreased, effective immediately after the effective date of such Extraordinary Dividend, by the amount of cash and/or the fair market value (as determined by the Board in good faith) of any securities or other assets paid on each share of Common Stock in respect of such Extraordinary Dividend. For purposes of this subsection 4.1.2, "**Ordinary Cash Dividends**" means any cash dividend or cash distribution which, when combined on a per share basis with the per share amounts of all other cash dividends and cash distributions paid on the Common Stock during the 365-day period ending on the date of declaration of such dividend or distribution (as adjusted to appropriately reflect any of the events referred to in other subsections of this Section 4 and excluding cash dividends or cash distributions that resulted in an adjustment to the Warrant Price or to the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant) does not exceed \$0.50 (being 5% of the offering price of the Units in the Offering).

4.2 Aggregation of Shares. If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 4.6 hereof, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is decreased by a consolidation, combination, reverse stock split or reclassification of shares of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such consolidation, combination, reverse stock split, reclassification or similar event, the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant shall be decreased in proportion to such decrease in outstanding shares of Common Stock.

4.3 Adjustments in Exercise Price.

4.3.1 Whenever the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the Warrants is adjusted, the Warrant Price shall be adjusted (to the nearest cent) by multiplying such Warrant Price immediately prior to such adjustment by a fraction (x) the numerator of which shall be the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the Warrants immediately prior to such adjustment, and (y) the denominator of which shall be the number of shares of Common Stock so purchasable immediately thereafter.

4.3.2 If (x) the Company issues additional shares of Common Stock or securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock for capital raising purposes in connection with the closing of its initial Business Combination at an issue price or effective issue price of less than \$9.20 per share of Common Stock, with such issue price or effective issue price to be determined in good faith by the Board (and in the case of any such issuance to the Sponsor or its affiliates, without taking into account any shares of Class B common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "**Class B common stock**"), held by the Sponsor or its affiliates, as applicable, prior to such issuance) (the "**Newly Issued Price**"), (y) the aggregate gross proceeds from such issuances represent more than 60% of the total equity proceeds, and interest thereon, available for the funding of an initial Business Combination on the date of the consummation of such initial Business Combination (net of redemptions), and (z) the volume weighted average trading price of the Common Stock during the twenty (20) trading day period starting on the trading day prior to the day on which the Company consummates an initial Business Combination (such price, the "**Market Value**") is below \$9.20 per share, the Warrant Price will be adjusted (to the nearest cent) to be equal to 115% of the higher of the Market Value and the Newly Issued Price, and the \$18.00 per share redemption trigger prices (as described in Section 6.1) will be adjusted (to the nearest cent) to be equal to 180% of the higher of the Market Value and the Newly Issued Price.

4.4 Replacement of Securities upon Reorganization, etc. In case of any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (other than a change under Section 4.1 or Section 4.2 hereof or that solely affects the par value of such shares of Common Stock), or in the case of any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another entity or conversion of the Company as another entity (other than a consolidation or merger in which the Company is the continuing corporation and that does not result in any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Common Stock), or in the case of any sale or conveyance to another corporation or entity of the assets or other property of the Company as an entirety or substantially as an entirety in connection with which the Company is dissolved, the holders of the Warrants shall thereafter have the right to purchase and receive, upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions specified in the Warrants and in lieu of the shares of Common Stock of the Company immediately theretofore purchasable and receivable upon the exercise of the rights represented thereby, the kind and amount of shares of stock or other securities or property (including cash) receivable upon such reclassification, reorganization, merger or consolidation, or upon a dissolution following any such sale or transfer, that the holder of the Warrants would have received if such holder had exercised his, her or its Warrant(s) immediately prior to such event (the “**Alternative Issuance**”); provided, however, that (i) if the holders of the Common Stock were entitled to exercise a right of election as to the kind or amount of securities, cash or other assets receivable upon such consolidation or merger, then the kind and amount of securities, cash or other assets constituting the Alternative Issuance for which each Warrant shall become exercisable shall be deemed to be the weighted average of the kind and amount received per share by the holders of the Common Stock in such consolidation or merger that affirmatively make such election, and (ii) if a tender, exchange or redemption offer shall have been made to and accepted by the holders of the Common Stock (other than a tender, exchange or redemption offer made by the Company in connection with redemption rights held by stockholders of the Company as provided for in the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation or as a result of the repurchase of shares of Common Stock by the Company if a proposed initial Business Combination is presented to the stockholders of the Company for approval) under circumstances in which, upon completion of such tender or exchange offer, the maker thereof, together with members of any group (within the meaning of Rule 13d-5(b)(1) under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) of which such maker is a part, and together with any affiliate or associate of such maker (within the meaning of Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) and any members of any such group of which any such affiliate or associate is a part, own beneficially (within the meaning of Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, the holder of a Warrant shall be entitled to receive as the Alternative Issuance, the highest amount of cash, securities or other property to which such holder would actually have been entitled as a stockholder if such Warrant holder had exercised the Warrant prior to the expiration of such tender or exchange offer, accepted such offer and all of the Common Stock held by such holder had been purchased pursuant to such tender or exchange offer, subject to adjustments (from and after the consummation of such tender or exchange offer) as nearly equivalent as possible to the adjustments provided for in this Section 4; provided, further, that if less than 70% of the consideration receivable by the holders of the Common Stock in the applicable event is payable in the form of common stock in the successor entity that is listed for trading on a national securities exchange or is quoted in an established over-the-counter market, or is to be so listed for trading or quoted immediately following such event, and if the Registered Holder properly exercises the Warrant within thirty (30) days following the public disclosure of the consummation of such applicable event by the Company pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission, the Warrant Price shall be reduced by an amount (in dollars) (but in no event less than zero) equal to the difference of (i) the Warrant Price in effect prior to such reduction minus (ii) (A) the Per Share Consideration (as defined below) minus (B) the Black-Scholes Warrant Value (as defined below). The “**Black-Scholes Warrant Value**” means the value of a Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of the applicable event based on the Black-Scholes Warrant Model for a Capped American Call on Bloomberg Financial Markets (“**Bloomberg**”). For purposes of calculating such amount, (1) Section 6 of this Agreement shall be taken into account, (2) the price of each share of Common Stock shall be the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the effective date of the applicable event, (3) the assumed volatility shall be the 90 day volatility obtained from the HVT function on Bloomberg determined as of the trading day immediately prior to the day of the announcement of the applicable event, and (4) the assumed risk-free interest rate shall correspond to the U.S. Treasury rate for a period equal to the remaining term of the Warrant. “**Per Share Consideration**” means (i) if the consideration paid to holders of the Common Stock consists exclusively of cash, the amount of such cash per share of Common Stock, and (ii) in all other cases, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the effective date of the applicable event. If any reclassification or reorganization also results in a change in shares of Common Stock covered by subsection 4.1.1, then such adjustment shall be made pursuant to subsection 4.1.1 or Sections 4.2, 4.3 and this Section 4.4. The provisions of this Section 4.4 shall similarly apply to successive reclassifications, reorganizations, mergers or consolidations, sales or other transfers. In no event will the Warrant Price be reduced to less than the par value per share issuable upon exercise of the Warrant.

4.5 Notices of Changes in Warrant. Upon every adjustment of the Warrant Price or the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of a Warrant, the Company shall give written notice thereof to the Warrant Agent, which notice shall state the Warrant Price resulting from such adjustment and the increase or decrease, if any, in the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable at such price upon the exercise of a Warrant, setting forth in reasonable detail the method of calculation and the facts upon which such calculation is based. Upon the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 or 4.4, the Company shall give written notice of the occurrence of such event to each holder of a Warrant, at the last address set forth for such holder in the Warrant Register, of the record date or the effective date of the event. Failure to give such notice, or any defect therein, shall not affect the legality or validity of such event.

4.6 No Fractional Shares. Notwithstanding any provision contained in this Agreement to the contrary, the Company shall not issue fractional shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of Warrants. If, by reason of any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 4, the holder of any Warrant would be entitled, upon the exercise of such Warrant, to receive a fractional interest in a share, the Company shall, upon such exercise, round down to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such holder.

4.7 Form of Warrant. The form of Warrant need not be changed because of any adjustment pursuant to this Section 4, and Warrants issued after such adjustment may state the same Warrant Price and the same number of shares of Common Stock as is stated in the Warrants initially issued pursuant to this Agreement; provided, however, that the Company may at any time in its sole discretion make any change in the form of Warrant that the Company may deem appropriate and that does not affect the substance thereof, and any Warrant thereafter issued or countersigned, whether in exchange or substitution for an outstanding Warrant or otherwise, may be in the form as so changed.

4.8 Other Events. In case any event shall occur affecting the Company as to which none of the provisions of the preceding subsections of this Section 4 are strictly applicable, but which would require an adjustment to the terms of the Warrants in order to (i) avoid an adverse impact on the Warrants and (ii) effectuate the intent and purpose of this Section 4, then, in each such case, the Company shall appoint a firm of independent registered public accountants, investment banking or other appraisal firm of recognized national standing, which shall give its opinion as to whether or not any adjustment to the rights represented by the Warrants is necessary to effectuate the intent and purpose of this Section 4 and, if they determine that an adjustment is necessary, the terms of such adjustment; provided, however, that under no circumstances shall the Warrants be adjusted pursuant to this Section 4.8 as a result of any issuance of securities in connection with a Business Combination. The Company shall adjust the terms of the Warrants in a manner that is consistent with any adjustment recommended in such opinion.

4.9 No Adjustment. For the avoidance of doubt, no adjustment shall be made to the terms of the Warrants solely as a result of an adjustment to the conversion ratio of the Class B common stock into shares of Common Stock or the conversion of the shares of Class B common stock into shares of Common Stock, in each case, pursuant to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as further amended from time to time.

## 5. Transfer and Exchange of Warrants.

5.1 Registration of Transfer. The Warrant Agent shall register the transfer, from time to time, of any outstanding Warrant upon the Warrant Register, upon surrender of such Warrant for transfer, in the case of certificated Warrants, properly endorsed with signatures properly guaranteed and accompanied by appropriate instructions for transfer. Upon any such transfer, a new Warrant representing an equal aggregate number of Warrants shall be issued and the old Warrant shall be cancelled by the Warrant Agent. In the case of certificated Warrants, the Warrants so cancelled shall be delivered by the Warrant Agent to the Company from time to time upon request.

5.2 Procedure for Surrender of Warrants. Warrants may be surrendered to the Warrant Agent, together with a written request for exchange or transfer, and thereupon the Warrant Agent shall issue in exchange therefor one or more new Warrants as requested by the Registered Holder of the Warrants so surrendered, representing an equal aggregate number of Warrants; provided, however, that except as otherwise provided herein or with respect to any Book-Entry Warrant, each Book-Entry Warrant may be transferred only in whole and only to the Depository, to another nominee of the Depository, to a successor depository, or to a nominee of a successor depository; provided further, however that in the event that a Warrant surrendered for transfer bears a restrictive legend (as in the case of the Private Placement Warrants), the Warrant Agent shall not cancel such Warrant and issue new Warrants in exchange thereof until the Warrant Agent has received an opinion of counsel for the Company stating that such transfer may be made and indicating whether the new Warrants must also bear a restrictive legend.

5.3 Fractional Warrants. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any registration of transfer or exchange which shall result in the issuance of a warrant certificate or book-entry position for a fraction of a warrant, except as part of the Units.



5.4 Service Charges. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrants.

5.5 Warrant Execution and Countersignature. The Warrant Agent is hereby authorized to countersign and to deliver, in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, the Warrants required to be issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section 5, and the Company, whenever required by the Warrant Agent, shall supply the Warrant Agent with Warrants duly executed on behalf of the Company for such purpose.

5.6 Transfer of Warrants. Prior to the Detachment Date, the Public Warrants may be transferred or exchanged only together with the Unit in which such Warrant is included, and only for the purpose of effecting, or in conjunction with, a transfer or exchange of such Unit. Furthermore, each transfer of a Unit on the register relating to such Units shall operate also to transfer the Warrants included in such Unit. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the provisions of this Section 5.6 shall have no effect on any transfer of Warrants on and after the Detachment Date.

6. Redemption.

6.1 Redemption of Warrants When the Price per Share of Common Stock Equals or Exceeds \$18.00. Subject to Sections 6.5 and 6.6 hereof, not less than all of the outstanding Warrants may be redeemed, at the option of the Company, at any time during the Exercise Period, at the office of the Warrant Agent, upon notice to the Registered Holders of the Warrants, as described in Section 6.3 below, at a Redemption Price of \$0.01 per Warrant, provided that (a) the Reference Value (as defined below) equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share (subject to adjustment in compliance with Section 4 hereof) and (b) there is an effective registration statement covering the issuance of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, and a current prospectus relating thereto, available throughout the 30-day Redemption Period (as defined in Section 6.3 below) or the Company has elected to require the exercise of the Warrants on a “cashless basis” pursuant to subsection 3.3.1.

6.2 Redemption of Warrants When the Price per Share of Common Stock Equals or Exceeds \$10.00. Subject to Sections 6.5 and 6.6 hereof, not less than all of the outstanding Warrants may be redeemed, at the option of the Company, at any time during the Exercise Period, at the office of the Warrant Agent, upon notice to the Registered Holders of the Warrants, as described in Section 6.3 below, at a Redemption Price of \$0.10 per Warrant, provided that (a) the Reference Value equals or exceeds \$10.00 per share (subject to adjustment in compliance with Section 4 hereof) and (b) there is an effective registration statement covering the issuance of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, and a current prospectus relating thereto, available throughout the 30-day Redemption Period (as defined in Section 6.3 below). During the 30-day Redemption Period in connection with a redemption pursuant to this Section 6.2, Registered Holders of the Warrants may elect to exercise their Warrants on a “cashless basis” pursuant to subsection 3.3.1 and receive a number of shares of Common Stock determined by reference to the table below, based on the Redemption Date (calculated for purposes of the table as the period to expiration of the Warrants) and the Fair Market Value (as such term is defined in Section 3.3.1(b)) (a “**Make-Whole Exercise**”).

**Redemption Date  
(period to expiration of  
warrants)**

	<b>Fair Market Value of Our Common Stock</b>								
	<b>≥\$10.00</b>	<b>\$11.00</b>	<b>\$12.00</b>	<b>\$13.00</b>	<b>\$14.00</b>	<b>\$15.00</b>	<b>\$16.00</b>	<b>\$17.00</b>	<b>≥\$18.00</b>
60 months	0.261	0.281	0.297	0.311	0.324	0.337	0.348	0.358	0.361
57 months	0.257	0.277	0.294	0.310	0.324	0.337	0.348	0.358	0.361
54 months	0.252	0.272	0.291	0.307	0.322	0.335	0.347	0.357	0.361
51 months	0.246	0.268	0.287	0.304	0.320	0.333	0.346	0.357	0.361
48 months	0.241	0.263	0.283	0.301	0.317	0.332	0.344	0.356	0.361
45 months	0.235	0.258	0.279	0.298	0.315	0.330	0.343	0.356	0.361
42 months	0.228	0.252	0.274	0.294	0.312	0.328	0.342	0.355	0.361
39 months	0.221	0.246	0.269	0.290	0.309	0.325	0.340	0.354	0.361
36 months	0.213	0.239	0.263	0.285	0.305	0.323	0.339	0.353	0.361
33 months	0.205	0.232	0.257	0.280	0.301	0.320	0.337	0.352	0.361
30 months	0.196	0.224	0.250	0.274	0.297	0.316	0.335	0.351	0.361
27 months	0.185	0.214	0.242	0.268	0.291	0.313	0.332	0.350	0.361
24 months	0.173	0.204	0.233	0.260	0.285	0.308	0.329	0.348	0.361
21 months	0.161	0.193	0.223	0.252	0.279	0.304	0.326	0.347	0.361
18 months	0.146	0.179	0.211	0.242	0.271	0.298	0.322	0.345	0.361
15 months	0.130	0.164	0.197	0.230	0.262	0.291	0.317	0.342	0.361
12 months	0.111	0.146	0.181	0.216	0.250	0.282	0.312	0.339	0.361
9 months	0.090	0.125	0.162	0.199	0.237	0.272	0.305	0.336	0.361
6 months	0.065	0.099	0.137	0.178	0.219	0.259	0.296	0.331	0.361
3 months	0.034	0.065	0.104	0.150	0.197	0.243	0.286	0.326	0.361
0 months	—	—	0.042	0.115	0.179	0.233	0.281	0.323	0.361

The exact Fair Market Value and Redemption Date may not be set forth in the table above, in which case, if the Fair Market Value is between two values in the table or the Redemption Date is between two redemption dates in the table, the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued for each Warrant exercised in a Make-Whole Exercise will be determined by a straight-line interpolation between the number of shares set forth for the higher and lower Fair Market Values and the earlier and later redemption dates, as applicable, based on a 365- or 366-day year, as applicable.

The stock prices set forth in the column headings of the table above shall be adjusted as of any date on which the number of shares issuable upon exercise of a Warrant is adjusted pursuant to Section 4 hereof. In the event of a Warrant Price adjustment pursuant to Section 4.3.1, the adjusted stock prices in the column headings shall equal the stock prices immediately prior to such adjustment, multiplied by a fraction, the numerator of which is the number of shares deliverable upon exercise of a Warrant immediately prior to such adjustment and the denominator of which is the number of shares deliverable upon exercise of a Warrant as so adjusted. The number of shares in the table above shall be adjusted in the same manner and at the same time as the number of shares issuable upon exercise of a Warrant. In no event will the number of shares issued in connection with a Make-Whole Exercise exceed 0.361 shares of Common Stock per Warrant (subject to adjustment).

6.3 Date Fixed for, and Notice of, Redemption; Redemption Price; Reference Value. In the event that the Company elects to redeem the Warrants, pursuant to Sections 6.1 or 6.2, the Company shall fix a date for the redemption (the “**Redemption Date**”). Notice of redemption shall be mailed by first class mail, postage prepaid, by the Company not less than thirty (30) days prior to the Redemption Date (the “**30-day Redemption Period**”) to the Registered Holders of the Warrants to be redeemed at their last addresses as they shall appear on the registration books. Any notice mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given whether or not the Registered Holder received such notice. As used in this Agreement, (a) “**Redemption Price**” shall mean the price per Warrant at which any Warrants are redeemed pursuant to Sections 6.1 or 6.2 and (b) “**Reference Value**” shall mean the last reported sales price of the shares of Common Stock for any twenty (20) trading days within the thirty (30) trading-day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which notice of the redemption is given.

6.4 Exercise After Notice of Redemption. The Warrants may be exercised, for cash (or on a “cashless basis” in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) or Section 6.2 of this Agreement) at any time after notice of redemption shall have been given by the Company pursuant to Section 6.3 hereof and prior to the Redemption Date. In the event that the Company determines to require all holders of Warrants to exercise their Warrants on a “cashless basis” pursuant to subsection 3.3.1, the notice of redemption shall contain the information necessary to calculate the number of shares of Common Stock to be received upon exercise of the Warrants, including the Fair Market Value (as such term is defined in subsection 3.3.1(b) hereof) in such case. On and after the Redemption Date, the record holder of the Warrants shall have no further rights except to receive, upon surrender of the Warrants, the Redemption Price.

6.5 Exclusion of Private Placement Warrants. The Company agrees that the redemption rights provided in Sections 6.1 and 6.2 hereof shall not apply to the Private Placement Warrants if at the time of the redemption such Private Placement Warrants continue to be held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees. However, once such Private Placement Warrants are transferred (other than to Permitted Transferees in accordance with Section 2.6 hereof), the Company may redeem the Private Placement Warrants pursuant to Sections 6.1 or 6.2 hereof, provided that the criteria for redemption are met, including the opportunity of the holder of such Private Placement Warrants to exercise the Private Placement Warrants prior to redemption pursuant to Section 6.4 hereof. Private Placement Warrants that are transferred to persons other than Permitted Transferees shall upon such transfer cease to be Private Placement Warrants that are transferred to persons other than Permitted Transferees shall, upon such transfer, cease to be Private Placement Warrants, and shall become Public Warrants under this Agreement, including for purposes of Section 9.8 hereof.

6.6 Public Warrants Held By the Company's Officers or Directors. The Company agrees that if Public Warrants are held by any of the Company's officers or directors, the Public Warrants held by such officers and directors will be subject to the redemption rights provided in Section 6.2, except that such officers and directors shall only receive the "Public Warrant Fair Market Value" for such Public Warrants so redeemed. "**Public Warrant Fair Market Value**" in this Section 6.6 shall mean the last reported sale price of the Public Warrants on the applicable Redemption Date.

7. Other Provisions Relating to Rights of Holders of Warrants.

7.1 No Rights as Stockholder. A Warrant does not entitle the Registered Holder thereof to any of the rights of a stockholder of the Company, including, without limitation, the right to receive dividends, or other distributions, exercise any preemptive rights to vote or to consent or to receive notice as a stockholder in respect of the meetings of stockholders or the election of directors of the Company or any other matter.

7.2 Lost, Stolen, Mutilated, or Destroyed Warrants. If any Warrant is lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed, the Company and the Warrant Agent may on such terms as to indemnify or otherwise as they may in their discretion impose (which shall, in the case of a mutilated Warrant, include the surrender thereof), issue a new Warrant of like denomination, tenor, and date as the Warrant so lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed. Any such new Warrant shall constitute a substitute contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the allegedly lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed Warrant shall be at any time enforceable by anyone.

7.3 Reservation of Common Stock. The Company shall at all times reserve and keep available a number of its authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock that shall be sufficient to permit the exercise in full of all outstanding Warrants issued pursuant to this Agreement.

7.4 Registration of Common Stock; Cashless Exercise at Company's Option.

7.4.1 Registration of the Common Stock. The Company agrees that as soon as practicable, but in no event later than twenty (20) Business Days after the closing of its initial Business Combination, it shall use commercially reasonable efforts to file with the Commission a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants. The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to cause the same to become effective and to maintain the effectiveness of such registration statement, and a current prospectus relating thereto, until the expiration or redemption of the Warrants in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement. If any such registration statement has not been declared effective by the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) Business Day following the closing of the Business Combination, holders of the Warrants shall have the right, during the period beginning on the sixty-first (61<sup>st</sup>) Business Day after the closing of the Business Combination and ending upon such registration statement being declared effective by the Commission, and during any other period when the Company shall fail to have maintained an effective registration statement covering the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, to exercise such Warrants on a "cashless basis," pursuant to subsection 3.3.1, by exchanging the Warrants (in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule) or another exemption) for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the lesser of (A) the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value" (as defined below) over the Warrant Price by (y) the Fair Market Value and (B) 0.361. Solely for purposes of this subsection 7.4.1, "**Fair Market Value**" shall mean the volume-weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the date that notice of exercise is received by the Warrant Agent from the holder of such Warrants or his, her or its securities broker or intermediary. The date that notice of cashless exercise is received by the Warrant Agent shall be conclusively determined by the Warrant Agent. In connection with the "cashless exercise" of a Public Warrant, the Company shall, upon request, provide the Warrant Agent with an opinion of counsel for the Company (which shall be an outside law firm with securities law experience) stating that (i) the exercise of the Warrants on a cashless basis in accordance with this subsection 7.4.1 is not required to be registered under the Securities Act and (ii) the shares of Common Stock issued upon such exercise shall be freely tradable under United States federal securities laws by anyone who is not an affiliate (as such term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act (or any successor statute)) of the Company and, accordingly, shall not be required to bear a restrictive legend. Except as provided in subsection 7.4.2, for the avoidance of doubt, unless and until all of the Warrants have been exercised or have expired, the Company shall continue to be obligated to comply with its registration obligations under the first three sentences of this subsection 7.4.1.

7.4.2 Cashless Exercise at Company's Option. If the Common Stock is at the time of any exercise of a Warrant not listed on a national securities exchange such that it satisfies the definition of a "covered security" under Section 18(b)(1) of the Securities Act (or any successor statute), the Company may, at its option, (i) require holders of Public Warrants who exercise Public Warrants to exercise such Public Warrants on a "cashless basis" in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act (or any successor statute) as described in subsection 7.4.1 and (ii) in the event the Company so elects, the Company shall (x) not be required to file or maintain in effect a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary and (y) use commercially reasonable efforts to register or qualify for sale the Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Public Warrant under applicable blue sky laws of the state of residence of the holder to the extent an exemption is not available.

8. Concerning the Warrant Agent and Other Matters.

8.1 Payment of Taxes. The Company shall from time to time promptly pay all taxes and charges that may be imposed upon the Company or the Warrant Agent in respect of the issuance or delivery of shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of the Warrants, but the Company shall not be obligated to pay any transfer taxes in respect of the Warrants or such shares of Common Stock.

8.2 Resignation, Consolidation, or Merger of Warrant Agent.

8.2.1 Appointment of Successor Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent, or any successor to it hereafter appointed, may resign its duties and be discharged from all further duties and liabilities hereunder after giving sixty (60) days' notice in writing to the Company. If the office of the Warrant Agent becomes vacant by resignation or incapacity to act or otherwise, the Company shall appoint in writing a successor Warrant Agent in place of the Warrant Agent. If the Company shall fail to make such appointment within a period of thirty (30) days after it has been notified in writing of such resignation or incapacity by the Warrant Agent or by the holder of a Warrant (who shall, with such notice, submit his, her or its Warrant for inspection by the Company), then the holder of any Warrant may apply to the Supreme Court of the State of New York for the County of New York for the appointment of a successor Warrant Agent at the Company's cost. Any successor Warrant Agent, whether appointed by the Company or by such court, shall be a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, in good standing and having its principal office in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, and authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers and subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority. After appointment, any successor Warrant Agent shall be vested with all the authority, powers, rights, immunities, duties, and obligations of its predecessor Warrant Agent with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, without any further act or deed; but if for any reason it becomes necessary or appropriate, the predecessor Warrant Agent shall execute and deliver, at the expense of the Company, an instrument transferring to such successor Warrant Agent all the authority, powers, and rights of such predecessor Warrant Agent hereunder; and upon request of any successor Warrant Agent the Company shall make, execute, acknowledge, and deliver any and all instruments in writing for more fully and effectually vesting in and confirming to such successor Warrant Agent all such authority, powers, rights, immunities, duties, and obligations.

8.2.2 Notice of Successor Warrant Agent. In the event a successor Warrant Agent shall be appointed, the Company shall give notice thereof to the predecessor Warrant Agent and the Transfer Agent for the Common Stock not later than the effective date of any such appointment.

8.2.3 Merger or Consolidation of Warrant Agent. Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent may be merged or with which it may be consolidated or any corporation resulting from any merger or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without any further act.

8.3 Fees and Expenses of Warrant Agent.

8.3.1 Remuneration. The Company agrees to pay the Warrant Agent reasonable remuneration for its services as such Warrant Agent hereunder and shall, pursuant to its obligations under this Agreement, reimburse the Warrant Agent upon demand for all expenditures that the Warrant Agent may reasonably incur in the execution of its duties hereunder.

8.3.2 Further Assurances. The Company agrees to perform, execute, acknowledge, and deliver or cause to be performed, executed, acknowledged, and delivered all such further and other acts, instruments, and assurances as may reasonably be required by the Warrant Agent for the carrying out or performing of the provisions of this Agreement.

8.4 Liability of Warrant Agent.

8.4.1 Reliance on Company Statement. Whenever in the performance of its duties under this Agreement, the Warrant Agent shall deem it necessary or desirable that any fact or matter be proved or established by the Company prior to taking or suffering any action hereunder, such fact or matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by a statement signed by the President, the Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, the Secretary or the Chairman of the Board of the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent may rely upon such statement for any action taken or suffered in good faith by it pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement.

8.4.2 Indemnity. The Warrant Agent shall be liable hereunder only for its own gross negligence, willful misconduct, fraud or bad faith. The Company agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent and save it harmless against any and all liabilities, including judgments, out-of-pocket costs and reasonable outside counsel fees, for anything done or omitted by the Warrant Agent in the execution of this Agreement, except as a result of the Warrant Agent's gross negligence, willful misconduct, fraud or bad faith.

8.4.3 Exclusions. The Warrant Agent shall have no responsibility with respect to the validity of this Agreement or with respect to the validity or execution of any Warrant (except its countersignature thereof). The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any breach by the Company of any covenant or condition contained in this Agreement or in any Warrant. The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible to make any adjustments required under the provisions of Section 4 hereof or responsible for the manner, method, or amount of any such adjustment or the ascertaining of the existence of facts that would require any such adjustment; nor shall it by any act hereunder be deemed to make any representation or warranty as to the authorization or reservation of any shares of Common Stock to be issued pursuant to this Agreement or any Warrant or as to whether any shares of Common Stock shall, when issued, be valid and fully paid and non-assessable.

8.5 Acceptance of Agency. The Warrant Agent hereby accepts the agency established by this Agreement and agrees to perform the same upon the terms and conditions herein set forth and among other things, shall account promptly to the Company with respect to Warrants exercised and concurrently account for, and pay to the Company, all monies received by the Warrant Agent for the purchase of shares of Common Stock through the exercise of the Warrants.

8.6 Waiver. The Warrant Agent has no right of set-off or any other right, title, interest or claim of any kind ("**Claim**") in, or to any distribution of, the Trust Account (as defined in that certain Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and between the Company and the Warrant Agent as trustee thereunder) and hereby agrees not to seek recourse, reimbursement, payment or satisfaction for any Claim against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever. The Warrant Agent hereby waives any and all Claims against the Trust Account and any and all rights to seek access to the Trust Account.

9. Miscellaneous Provisions.

9.1 Successors. All the covenants and provisions of this Agreement by or for the benefit of the Company or the Warrant Agent shall bind and inure to the benefit of their respective successors and assigns.

9.2 Notices. Any notice, statement or demand authorized by this Agreement to be given or made by the Warrant Agent or by the holder of any Warrant to or on the Company shall be sufficiently given when so delivered if by hand or overnight delivery or if sent by certified mail or private courier service within five (5) days after deposit of such notice, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Warrant Agent), as follows:

MCAP Acquisition Corporation  
311 South Wacker Drive, Suite 6400  
Chicago, Illinois 60606  
Attn: Theodore L. Koenig

Any notice, statement or demand authorized by this Agreement to be given or made by the holder of any Warrant or by the Company to or on the Warrant Agent shall be sufficiently given when so delivered if by hand or overnight delivery or if sent by certified mail or private courier service within five (5) days after deposit of such notice, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Warrant Agent with the Company), as follows:

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, NY 10004  
Attn: Compliance Department

With a copy in each case to:

Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough LLP  
101 Constitution Avenue NW, Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20001  
Attn: Jonathan H. Talcott, Esq. and E. Peter Strand, Esq.  
Email: jon.talcott@nelsonmullins.com and peter.strand@nelsonmullins.com

and

Greenberg Traurig, LLP  
1750 Tysons Boulevard, Suite 1000  
McLean, VA 22102  
Attn: Alan I. Annex and Jason T. Simon, Esq.  
Email: annexa@gtlaw.com and simonj@gtlaw.com

9.3 Applicable Law. The validity, interpretation, and performance of this Agreement and of the Warrants shall be governed in all respects by the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. The Company hereby agrees that any action, proceeding or claim against it arising out of or relating in any way to this Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, and irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive forum for any such action, proceeding or claim. The Company hereby waives any objection to such jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the provisions of this paragraph will not apply to suits brought to enforce any liability or duty created by the Exchange Act, any other claim for which the federal district courts of the United States of America have exclusive jurisdiction or any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act against us or any of our directors, officers, other employees or agents.

Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in the Warrants shall be deemed to have notice of and to have consented to the forum provisions in this Section 9.3. If any action, the subject matter of which is within the scope of the forum provisions above, is filed in a court other than a court located within the State of New York or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York (a "foreign action") in the name of any warrant holder, such warrant holder shall be deemed to have consented to: (x) the personal jurisdiction of the state and federal courts located within the State of New York or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York in connection with any action brought in any such court to enforce the forum provisions (an "enforcement action"), and (y) having service of process made upon such warrant holder in any such enforcement action by service upon such warrant holder's counsel in the foreign action as agent for such warrant holder.

9.4 Persons Having Rights under this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed to confer upon, or give to, any person or corporation other than the parties hereto and the Registered Holders of the Warrants any right, remedy, or claim under or by reason of this Agreement or of any covenant, condition, stipulation, promise, or agreement hereof. All covenants, conditions, stipulations, promises, and agreements contained in this Agreement shall be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the parties hereto and their successors and assigns and of the Registered Holders of the Warrants.

9.5 Examination of the Warrant Agreement. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the office of the Warrant Agent in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, for inspection by the Registered Holder of any Warrant. The Warrant Agent may require any such holder to submit such holder's Warrant for inspection by the Warrant Agent.

9.6 Counterparts; Electronic Signatures. This Agreement may be executed in any number of original or facsimile counterparts and each of such counterparts shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original, and all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument. A signature to this Agreement transmitted electronically shall have the same authority, effect, and enforceability as an original signature.

9.7 Effect of Headings. The section headings herein are for convenience only and are not part of this Agreement and shall not affect the interpretation thereof.

9.8 Amendments. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto without the consent of any Registered Holder (i) for the purpose of curing any ambiguity or to correct any mistake, including to conform the provisions hereof to the description of the terms of the Warrants and this Agreement set forth in the Prospectus, or curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein or adding or changing any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the parties may deem necessary or desirable and that the parties deem shall not adversely affect the interest of the Registered Holders, and (ii) to provide for the delivery of Alternative Issuance pursuant to Section 4.4. All other modifications or amendments, including any amendment to increase the Warrant Price or shorten the Exercise Period and any amendments to the terms of only the Private Placement Warrants, shall require the vote or written consent of the Registered Holders of 50% of the then outstanding Public Warrants and, solely with respect to any amendment to the terms of the Private Placement Warrants or any provision of this Agreement with respect to the Private Placement Warrants, 50% of the then-outstanding Private Placement Warrants. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may lower the Warrant Price or extend the duration of the Exercise Period pursuant to Sections 3.1 and 3.2, respectively, without the consent of the Registered Holders.

9.9 Severability. This Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible and be valid and enforceable.

9.10 Business Continuity Plan. The Warrant Agent shall maintain plans for business continuity, disaster recovery, and backup capabilities and facilities designed to ensure the Warrant Agent's continued performance of its obligations under this Agreement, including, without limitation, loss of production, loss of systems, loss of equipment, failure of carriers and the failure of the Warrant Agent's or its supplier's equipment, computer systems or business systems ("**Business Continuity Plan**"). Such Business Continuity Plan shall include, but shall not be limited to, testing, accountability and corrective actions designed to be promptly implemented, if necessary. In addition, in the event that the Warrant Agent has knowledge of an incident affecting the integrity or availability of such Business Continuity Plan, then the Warrant Agent shall, as promptly as practicable, but no later than twenty-four (24) hours (or sooner to the extent required by applicable law or regulation) after the Warrant Agent becomes aware of such incident, notify the Company in writing of such incident and provide the Company with updates, as deemed appropriate by the Warrant Agent under the circumstances, with respect to the status of all related remediation efforts in connection with such incident. The Warrant Agent represents that, as of the date of this Agreement, such Business Continuity Plan is active and functioning normally in all material respects.

9.11 Confidentiality. The Warrant Agent and the Company agree that all books, records, information and data pertaining to the business of the other party, including *inter alia*, personal, non-public warrant holder information, which are exchanged or received pursuant to the negotiation or the carrying out of this Warrant Agreement, including the fees for services, shall remain confidential, and shall not be voluntarily disclosed to any other person, except as may be required by law or regulation, including, without limitation, pursuant to requests from the Securities and Exchange Commission and subpoenas from state or federal government authorities (e.g., in divorce and criminal actions).

Exhibit A – Form of Warrant Certificate

Exhibit B – Legend

[Signature Page Follows]



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first above written.

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Scott A. Marienau

Name: Scott A. Marienau

Title: Chief Financial Officer

**CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY, as  
Warrant Agent**

By: /s/ James F. Kiszka

Name: James F. Kiszka

Title: Vice President

[Signature Page to Warrant Agreement]

---

**EXHIBIT A**

Form of Warrant Certificate

[FACE]

Number

**Warrants**

**THIS WARRANT SHALL BE NULL AND VOID IF NOT EXERCISED PRIOR TO  
THE EXPIRATION OF THE EXERCISE PERIOD PROVIDED FOR  
IN THE WARRANT AGREEMENT DESCRIBED BELOW**

MCAP Acquisition Corporation  
Incorporated Under the Laws of the State of Delaware

CUSIP [•]

**Warrant Certificate**

**This Warrant Certificate certifies that** \_\_\_\_\_, or registered assigns, is the registered holder of \_\_\_\_\_ warrant(s) evidenced hereby (the “**Warrants**” and each, a “**Warrant**”) to purchase shares of Class A common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share (“**Common Stock**”), of MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”). Each Warrant entitles the holder, upon exercise during the period set forth in the Warrant Agreement referred to below, to receive from the Company that number of fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock as set forth below, at the exercise price (the “**Exercise Price**”) as determined pursuant to the Warrant Agreement, payable in lawful money (or through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) of the United States of America upon surrender of this Warrant Certificate and payment of the Exercise Price at the office or agency of the Warrant Agent referred to below, subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Each whole Warrant is initially exercisable for one fully paid and non-assessable share of Common Stock. No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of any Warrant. If, upon the exercise of Warrant, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share, the Company will, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number of the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to the holder. The number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events as set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

The initial Exercise Price per share of Common Stock for any Warrant is equal to \$11.50 per whole share. The Exercise Price is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events as set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

Subject to the conditions set forth in the Warrant Agreement, the Warrants may be exercised only during the Exercise Period and to the extent not exercised by the end of such Exercise Period, such Warrants shall become null and void.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof and such further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as though fully set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid unless countersigned by the Warrant Agent, as such term is used in the Warrant Agreement.

This Warrant Certificate shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.

MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY, AS  
WARRANT AGENT

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

[Form of Warrant Certificate]

[Reverse]

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate are part of a duly authorized issue of Warrants entitling the holder on exercise to receive shares of Common Stock and are issued or to be issued pursuant to a Warrant Agreement dated as of February 25, 2021 (the “**Warrant Agreement**”), duly executed and delivered by the Company to Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation, as warrant agent (or successor warrant agent) (collectively, the “**Warrant Agent**”), which Warrant Agreement is hereby incorporated by reference in and made a part of this instrument and is hereby referred to for a description of the rights, limitation of rights, obligations, duties and immunities thereunder of the Warrant Agent, the Company and the holders (the words “**holders**” or “**holder**” meaning the Registered Holders or Registered Holder, respectively) of the Warrants. A copy of the Warrant Agreement may be obtained by the holder hereof upon written request to the Company. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Warrants may be exercised at any time during the Exercise Period set forth in the Warrant Agreement. The holder of Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may exercise them by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the form of Election to Purchase set forth hereon properly completed and executed, together with payment of the Exercise Price as specified in the Warrant Agreement (or through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) at the designated office(s) of the Warrant Agent. In the event that upon any exercise of Warrants evidenced hereby the number of Warrants exercised shall be less than the total number of Warrants evidenced hereby, there shall be issued to the holder hereof or his, her or its assignee, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the number of Warrants not exercised.

Notwithstanding anything else in this Warrant Certificate or the Warrant Agreement, no Warrant may be exercised unless at the time of exercise (i) a registration statement covering the shares of Common Stock to be issued upon exercise is effective under the Securities Act and (ii) a prospectus thereunder relating to the shares of Common Stock is current, except through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrant Agreement provides that upon the occurrence of certain events the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants set forth on the face hereof may, subject to certain conditions, be adjusted. If, upon exercise of a Warrant, the holder thereof would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Common Stock, the Company shall, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to the holder of the Warrant.

Warrant Certificates, when surrendered at the designated office(s) of the Warrant Agent by the Registered Holder thereof in person or by legal representative or attorney duly authorized in writing, may be exchanged, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, but without payment of any service charge, for another Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants.

Upon due presentation for registration of transfer of this Warrant Certificate at the office(s) of the Warrant Agent a new Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor and evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants shall be issued to the transferee(s) in exchange for this Warrant Certificate, subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, without charge except for any tax or other third-party charges imposed in connection therewith.

The Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the Registered Holder(s) hereof as the absolute owner(s) of this Warrant Certificate (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing hereon made by anyone), for the purpose of any exercise hereof, of any distribution to the holder(s) hereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary. Neither the Warrants nor this Warrant Certificate entitles any holder hereof to any rights of a stockholder of the Company.

Election to Purchase

(To Be Executed Upon Exercise of Warrant)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, to receive \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Common Stock and herewith tenders payment for such shares of Common Stock to the order of MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the “**Company**”) in the amount of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that a certificate for such shares of Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such shares of Common Stock be delivered to whose address is \_\_\_\_\_. If said number of shares of Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Common Stock purchasable hereunder, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_, and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

In the event that the Warrant has been called for redemption by the Company pursuant to Section 6.1 or Section 6.2 of the Warrant Agreement and the Company has required cashless exercise pursuant to Section 6.4 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 6.4 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is a Private Placement Warrant that is to be exercised on a “cashless” basis pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is to be exercised on a “cashless” basis pursuant to Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant may be exercised, to the extent allowed by the Warrant Agreement, through cashless exercise (i) the number of shares of Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for would be determined in accordance with the relevant section of the Warrant Agreement which allows for such cashless exercise and (ii) the holder hereof shall complete the following: The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, through the cashless exercise provisions of the Warrant Agreement, to receive shares of Common Stock. If said number of shares of Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Common Stock purchasable hereunder (after giving effect to the cashless exercise), the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_, and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ (Signature)

(Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Tax Identification Number)

Signature Guaranteed:  
\_\_\_\_\_

THE SIGNATURE(S) SHOULD BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO SEC RULE 17Ad-15 (OR ANY SUCCESSOR RULE) UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT, OF 1934, AS AMENDED).

## **EXHIBIT B**

### **LEGEND**

“THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED HEREBY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR ANY STATE SECURITIES LAWS, AND MAY NOT BE OFFERED, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR OTHERWISE DISPOSED OF UNLESS REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, AND ANY APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS OR AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION IS AVAILABLE. IN ADDITION, SUBJECT TO ANY ADDITIONAL LIMITATIONS ON TRANSFER DESCRIBED IN THE LETTER AGREEMENT BY AND AMONG MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION (THE “COMPANY”), MCAP ACQUISITION, LLC AND THE OTHER PARTIES THERETO, THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED HEREBY MAY NOT BE SOLD OR TRANSFERRED PRIOR TO THE DATE THAT IS THIRTY (30) DAYS AFTER THE DATE UPON WHICH THE COMPANY COMPLETES ITS INITIAL BUSINESS COMBINATION (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 3 OF THE WARRANT AGREEMENT REFERRED TO HEREIN) EXCEPT TO A PERMITTED TRANSFEREE (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2 OF THE WARRANT AGREEMENT) WHO AGREES IN WRITING WITH THE COMPANY TO BE SUBJECT TO SUCH TRANSFER PROVISIONS.

SECURITIES EVIDENCED HEREBY AND SHARES OF CLASS A COMMON STOCK OF THE COMPANY ISSUED UPON EXERCISE OF SUCH SECURITIES SHALL BE ENTITLED TO REGISTRATION RIGHTS UNDER A REGISTRATION AND STOCKHOLDER RIGHTS AGREEMENT TO BE EXECUTED BY THE COMPANY.”

February 25, 2021

MCAP Acquisition Corporation  
311 South Wacker Drive, Suite 6400  
Chicago, Illinois 60606

Re: Initial Public Offering

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This letter (this "**Letter Agreement**") is being delivered to you in accordance with the Underwriting Agreement (the "**Underwriting Agreement**") by and between MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), and Cowen and Company, LLC, as the representative (the "**Representative**") of the several underwriters named therein (each an "**Underwriter**" and collectively, the "**Underwriters**"), relating to an underwritten initial public offering (the "**Public Offering**"), of up to 31,625,000 of the Company's units (including up to 4,125,000 units that may be purchased to cover the Underwriters' option to purchase additional units, if any) (the "**Units**"), each comprised of one share of Class A common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share ("**Class A Common Stock**"), and one-third of one redeemable warrant (each whole warrant, a "**Warrant**"). Each Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Class A Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment. The Units will be sold in the Public Offering pursuant to a registration statement on Form S-1 and prospectus (the "**Prospectus**") filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**"). Certain capitalized terms used herein are defined in paragraph 11 hereof.

In order to induce the Company and the Underwriters to enter into the Underwriting Agreement and to proceed with the Public Offering and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, MCAP Acquisition, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "**Sponsor**"), and each of the other undersigned individuals, each of whom is a member of the Company's board of directors and/or management team (each, an "**Insider**" and collectively, the "**Insiders**"), each hereby agrees with the Company as follows:

1. The Sponsor and each Insider agree that if the Company seeks stockholder approval of a proposed Business Combination, then in connection with such proposed Business Combination, it, he or she shall (i) vote any Shares owned by it, him or her in favor of any proposed Business Combination (including any proposals recommended by the Company's Board of Directors in connection with such Business Combination) and (ii) not redeem any Shares owned by it, him or her in connection with such stockholder approval. If the Company seeks to consummate a proposed Business Combination by engaging in a tender offer, the Sponsor and each Insider agrees that it, he or she will not sell or tender any Shares owned by it, him or her in connection therewith.

2. The Sponsor and each Insider hereby agrees that in the event that the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Public Offering, or such later period approved by the Company's stockholders in accordance with the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation, the Sponsor and each Insider shall take all reasonable steps to cause the Company to (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than 10 business days thereafter, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, redeem 100% of the shares of Class A Common Stock sold as part of the Units in the Public Offering (the "**Offering Shares**"), at a per share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable and less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), divided by the number of then-outstanding Offering Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish all Public Stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the other requirements of applicable law. The Sponsor and each Insider agree to not propose any amendment to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation (A) to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to allow redemption in connection with the Company's initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Company does not complete its initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Public Offering or (B) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity, unless the Company provides its Public Stockholders with the opportunity to redeem their Offering Shares upon approval of any such amendment at a per share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable), divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares.

---

The Sponsor and each Insider acknowledge that it, he or she has no right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account or any other asset of the Company as a result of any liquidation of the Company with respect to the Founder Shares. The Sponsor and each Insider hereby further waive, with respect to any Shares held by it, him or her, if any, any redemption rights it, he or she may have in connection with (x) the consummation of a Business Combination, including, without limitation, any such rights available in the context of a stockholder vote to approve such Business Combination or in the context of a tender offer made by the Company to purchase shares of Class A Common Stock and (y) a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation (A) to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to allow redemptions in connection with the Company's initial Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Company has not consummated its initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Public Offering or (B) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity (although the Sponsor and the Insiders shall be entitled to redemption and liquidation rights with respect to any Offering Shares it or they hold if the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination within 24 months from the date of the closing of the Public Offering).

3. Without limiting the provisions of paragraphs 7(a) and (b) below, during the period commencing on the effective date of the Underwriting Agreement and ending 180 days after such date, the undersigned shall not, without the prior written consent of the Representative, (i) offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase, or otherwise transfer or dispose of, directly or indirectly, or file with, or submit to, the Commission a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), relating to any Units, shares of Class A Common Stock, Founder Shares, Warrants or any securities convertible into, or exercisable, or exchangeable for, any Units, shares of Class A Common Stock, Founder Shares, or Warrants, or publicly disclose the intention to undertake any of the foregoing, or (ii) enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any Units, shares of Class A Common Stock, Founder Shares, or Warrants or any such other securities, whether any such transaction described in clause (i) or (ii) above is to be settled by delivery of units or such other securities, in cash or otherwise; provided, however, that the foregoing does not apply to the forfeiture of any Founder Shares pursuant to their terms or any transfer of Founder Shares to any current or future independent director of the company (as long as such current or future independent director transferee is subject to this Letter Agreement or executes an agreement substantially identical to the terms of this Letter Agreement, as applicable to directors and officers at the time of such transfer; and as long as, to the extent any Section 16 reporting obligation is triggered as a result of such transfer, any related Section 16 filing includes a practical explanation as to the nature of the transfer). Each of the Insiders and the Sponsor acknowledges and agrees that, prior to the effective date of any release or waiver, of the restrictions set forth in this paragraph 3 or paragraph 7 below, the Company may announce the impending release or waiver by press release through a major news service at least two business days before the effective date of the release or waiver. The provisions of this paragraph will not apply if (i) the release or waiver is effected solely to permit a transfer of securities that is not for consideration and (ii) the transferee has agreed in writing to be bound by the same terms described in this Letter Agreement to the extent and for the duration that such terms remain in effect at the time of the transfer.

4. In the event of the liquidation of the Trust Account, the Sponsor (which for purposes of clarification shall not extend to any other stockholders, members or managers of the Sponsor) agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever (including, but not limited to, any and all legal or other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, whether pending or threatened, or any claim whatsoever) to which the Company may become subject as a result of any claim by (i) any third party (other than the Company's independent registered public accounting firm) for services rendered or products sold to the Company or (ii) a prospective target business with which the Company has discussed entering into a transaction agreement (a "**Target**"); provided, however, that such indemnification of the Company by the Sponsor shall apply only to the extent necessary to ensure that such claims by a third party for services rendered (other than the Company's independent registered public accounting firm) or products sold to the Company or a Target do not reduce the amount of funds in the Trust Account to below (i) \$10.00 per Offering Share or (ii) such lesser amount per Offering Share held in the Trust Account as of the date of the liquidation of the Trust Account due to reductions in the value of the trust assets as of the date of the liquidation of the Trust Account, in each case, net of the amount of interest which may be withdrawn to pay taxes, except as to any claims by a third party who executed a waiver of any and all rights to seek access to the Trust Account and except as to any claims under the Company's indemnity of the Underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. In the event that any such executed waiver is deemed to be unenforceable against such third party, the Sponsor shall not be responsible to the extent of any liability for such third party claims. The Sponsor shall have the right to defend against any such claim with counsel of its choice reasonably satisfactory to the Company if, within 15 days following written receipt of notice of the claim to the Sponsor, the Sponsor notifies the Company in writing that it shall undertake such defense.



5. (a) To the extent that the Underwriters do not exercise their option to purchase up to an additional 4,125,000 Units within 45 days from the date of the Prospectus (and as further described in the Prospectus), the Sponsor agrees that it shall forfeit, at no cost, a number of Founder Shares in the aggregate equal to 1,031,250 multiplied by a fraction, (i) the numerator of which is 4,125,000 minus the number of Units purchased by the Underwriters upon the exercise of their option to purchase additional Units and (ii) the denominator of which is 4,125,000. All references in this Letter Agreement to Founder Shares of the Company being forfeited shall take effect as a contribution of such Founder Shares to the Company's capital as a matter of Delaware law. The forfeiture will be adjusted to the extent that the option to purchase additional Units is not exercised in full by the Underwriters so that the number of Founder Shares will equal an aggregate of 20.0% of the Company's issued and outstanding Shares after the Public Offering. The Sponsor further agrees that to the extent that the size of the Public Offering is increased or decreased, the Company will effect a capitalization or stock repurchase or redemption, as applicable, immediately prior to the consummation of the Public Offering in such amount as to maintain the number of Founder Shares at 20.0% of the Company's issued and outstanding Shares upon the consummation of the Public Offering. In connection with such increase or decrease in the size of the Public Offering, then (A) the references to 4,125,000 in the numerator and denominator of the formula in the first sentence of this paragraph shall be changed to a number equal to 15.0% of the number of shares of Class A Common Stock included in the Units issued in the Public Offering, (B) the reference to 1,031,250 in the formula set forth in the first sentence of this paragraph shall be adjusted to, respectively, the total number of Founder Shares that the Sponsor would have to return to the Company in order for the number of Founder Shares that the Sponsor owns (together with the Insiders) to equal an aggregate of 20.0% of the Company's issued and outstanding Shares after the Public Offering.

6. The Sponsor and each Insider hereby agree and acknowledge that: (i) the Underwriters and the Company would be irreparably injured in the event of a breach by such Sponsor or Insider of its, his or her obligations under paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7(a) and 7(b) of this Letter Agreement (ii) monetary damages may not be an adequate remedy for such breach and (iii) the non-breaching party shall be entitled to seek injunctive relief, in addition to any other remedy that such party may have in law or in equity, in the event of such breach.

7. (a) The Sponsor and each Insider agree that it, he or she shall not Transfer (as defined below) any Founder Shares (or shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon conversion thereof) until the earlier of (A) one year after the completion of the Company's initial Business Combination and (B) subsequent to the Business Combination, (x) the date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction that results in all of the Public Stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Class A Common Stock for cash, securities or other property or (y) if the last reported sale price of the Class A Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company's initial Business Combination (the "**Founder Shares Lock-Up Period**").

(b) The Sponsor and each Insider agree that it, he or she shall not Transfer any Private Placement Warrants, included therein or any shares of Class A Common Stock issued or issuable upon the conversion or exercise of the Private Placement Warrants, until 30 days after the completion of a Business Combination (together with the Founder Shares Lock-Up Period, the "**Lock-Up Periods**").

(c) Notwithstanding the provisions set forth in paragraphs 7(a) and (b), Transfers of the Founder Shares, Private Placement Warrants, and shares of Class A Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise or conversion of the Private Placement Warrants or the Founder Shares and that are held by the Sponsor or any Insider or any of their permitted transferees (that have complied with this paragraph 7(c)), are permitted (a) to the Company's officers or directors, any affiliates or family members of any of the Company's officers or directors, any members of the Sponsor, or any affiliates of the Sponsor, (b) in the case of an individual, by gift to a member of the individual's immediate family or to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of the individual's immediate family or an affiliate of such person, or to a charitable organization, (c) in the case of an individual, by virtue of laws of descent and distribution upon death of the individual, (d) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order, (e) by private sales or transfers made in connection with the consummation of the Company's Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the securities were originally purchased, (f) in the event of the Company's liquidation prior to the Company's completion of an initial Business Combination, (g) by virtue of the laws of the State of Delaware or the Sponsor's limited liability company agreement, as amended, upon dissolution of the Sponsor, or (h) in the event of the Company's completion of a liquidation, merger, stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction which results in all of the Public Stockholders having the right to exchange their Class A Common Stock for cash, securities or other property subsequent to the Company's completion of an initial Business Combination; provided, however, that in the case of clauses (a) through (e), these permitted transferees must enter into a written agreement with the Company agreeing to be bound by the transfer restrictions and other applicable restrictions in this Letter Agreement.

8. The Sponsor and each Insider represent and warrant that it, he or she has never been suspended or expelled from membership in any securities or commodities exchange or association or had a securities or commodities license or registration denied, suspended or revoked. Each Insider's biographical information furnished to the Company, if any (including any such information included in the Prospectus), is true and accurate in all respects and does not omit any material information with respect to such Insider's background. The Sponsor and each Insider's questionnaire furnished to the Company, if any, is true and accurate in all respects. The Sponsor and each Insider represent and warrant that: it is not subject to or a respondent in any legal action for, any injunction, cease-and-desist order or order or stipulation to desist or refrain from any act or practice relating to the offering of securities in any jurisdiction; it has never been convicted of, or pleaded guilty to, any crime (i) involving fraud, (ii) relating to any financial transaction or handling of funds of another person, or (iii) pertaining to any dealings in any securities and it is not currently a defendant in any such criminal proceeding.

9. Except as disclosed in, or as expressly contemplated by, the Prospectus, neither the Sponsor nor any Insider nor any affiliate of the Sponsor or any Insider, nor any director or officer of the Company, shall receive from the Company any finder's fee, reimbursement, consulting fee, monies in respect of any repayment of a loan or other compensation prior to, or in connection with any services rendered in order to effectuate the consummation of the Company's initial Business Combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is)..

10. The Sponsor and each Insider has full right and power, without violating any agreement to which it is bound (including, without limitation, any non-competition or non-solicitation agreement with any employer or former employer), to enter into this Letter Agreement and, as applicable, to serve as an officer and/or a director on the board of directors of the Company and hereby consents to being named in the Prospectus as an officer and/or a director of the Company.

11. As used herein, (i) "**Business Combination**" shall mean a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses; (ii) "**Founder Shares**" shall mean the 7,906,250 shares of Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, issued and outstanding immediately prior to the consummation of the Public Offering (up to 1,031,250 shares of which are subject to complete or partial forfeiture by the Sponsor to the extent the over-allotment option is not exercised by the Underwriters); (iii) "**Private Placement Warrants**" shall mean the 5,433,333 warrants of the Company (or 5,983,333 warrants if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) that the Sponsor has agreed to purchase for an aggregate purchase price of \$8,150,000 in the aggregate (or \$8,975,000 if the over-allotment option is exercised in full), or \$1.50 per warrant, in a private placement that shall occur substantially concurrently with the consummation of the Public Offering; (iv) "**Public Stockholders**" shall mean the holders of securities issued in the Public Offering; (v) "**Shares**" shall mean, collectively, the Class A Common Stock, the Founder Shares, Private Placement Warrants, and Class A Common Stock underlying the Private Placement Warrants; (vi) "**Trust Account**" shall mean the trust fund into which a portion of the net proceeds of the Public Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Warrants to the Sponsor shall be deposited; and (vii) "**Transfer**" shall mean the (a) sale or assignment of, offer to sell, contract or agreement to sell, hypothecate, pledge, grant of any option to purchase or otherwise dispose of or agreement to dispose of, directly or indirectly, or establishment or increase of a put equivalent position or liquidation with respect to or decrease of a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder with respect to, any security, (b) entry into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any security, whether any such transaction is to be settled by delivery of such securities, in cash or otherwise, or (c) public announcement of any intention to effect any transaction specified in clause (a) or (b) herein.

12. This Letter Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto in respect of the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior understandings, agreements, or representations by or among the parties hereto, written or oral, to the extent they relate in any way to the subject matter hereof or the transactions contemplated hereby. This Letter Agreement may not be changed, amended, modified or waived (other than to correct a typographical error) as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by (1) each Insider and the Sponsor that is the subject of any such change, amendment modification or waiver and (2) the Company.

13. No party hereto may assign either this Letter Agreement or any of its rights, interests, or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of the other parties. Any purported assignment in violation of this paragraph shall be void and ineffectual and shall not operate to transfer or assign any interest or title to the purported assignee. This Letter Agreement shall be binding on the Sponsor and each Insider and their respective successors, heirs and assigns and permitted transferees.

14. Nothing in this Letter Agreement shall be construed to confer upon, or give to, any person or corporation other than the parties hereto any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Letter Agreement or of any covenant, condition, stipulation, promise or agreement hereof. All covenants, conditions, stipulations, promises and agreements contained in this Letter Agreement shall be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the parties hereto and their successors, heirs, personal representatives and assigns and permitted transferees; provided, however, that the Underwriters shall benefit from the provisions set forth in paragraph 3, which such paragraphs shall not be amended or modified without the written consent of the Representative.

15. This Letter Agreement may be executed in any number of original or facsimile counterparts and each of such counterparts shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original, and all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

16. This Letter Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Letter Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Letter Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible and be valid and enforceable.

17. This Letter Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. The parties hereto (i) all agree that any action, proceeding, claim or dispute arising out of, or relating in any way to, this Letter Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of New York City, in the State of New York, and irrevocably submit to such jurisdiction and venue, which jurisdiction and venue shall be exclusive and (ii) waive any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and venue or that such courts represent an inconvenient forum.

18. Any notice, consent or request to be given in connection with any of the terms or provisions of this Letter Agreement shall be in writing and shall be sent by express mail or similar private courier service, by certified mail (return receipt requested), by hand delivery or facsimile or other electronic transmission.

19. Each party hereto shall not be liable for any breaches or misrepresentations contained in this Letter Agreement by any other party to this Letter Agreement, and no party shall be liable or responsible for the obligations of another party, including, without limitation, indemnification obligations and notice obligations.

20. This Letter Agreement shall terminate on the earlier of (i) the expiration of the Lock-Up Periods and (ii) the liquidation of the Company; provided, however, that this Letter Agreement shall earlier terminate in the event that the Public Offering is not consummated and closed by March 12, 2021; provided further that paragraph 4 of this Letter Agreement shall survive such liquidation.

[Signature page follows]

Sincerely,

**MCAP ACQUISITION, LLC**

By: Monroe Capital Management Advisors, LLC, its manager

/s/ Peter Gruszka

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Peter Gruszka

Title: General Counsel and Managing Director

/s/ Theodore L. Koenig  
Theodore L. Koenig

/s/ Zia Uddin  
Zia Uddin

/s/ Mark A. Solovy  
Mark A. Solovy

/s/ Scott A. Marienau  
Scott A. Marienau

/s/ Peter Gruszka  
Peter Gruszka

/s/ Thomas J. Allison  
Thomas J. Allison

/s/ John C. Chrystal  
John C. Chrystal

/s/ Roger Schoenfeld  
Roger Schoenfeld

Acknowledged and Agreed:

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Theodore L. Koenig

Name: Theodore L. Koenig

Title: Chief Executive Officer

## INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT TRUST AGREEMENT

This Investment Management Trust Agreement (this “**Agreement**”) is made effective as of February 25, 2021, by and between MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York limited purpose trust company (the “**Trustee**”).

WHEREAS, the Company’s registration statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-252607) (the “**Registration Statement**”) and prospectus (the “**Prospectus**”) for the initial public offering of the Company’s units (the “**Units**”), each of which consists of one share of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), and one-third of one redeemable warrant, each whole warrant entitling the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock (such initial public offering hereinafter referred to as the “**Offering**”), has been declared effective as of the date hereof (the “**Effective Date**”) by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission;

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into an Underwriting Agreement (the “**Underwriting Agreement**”) with Cowen and Company, LLC, as representative (the “**Representative**”) of the several underwriters (the “**Underwriters**”) named therein;

WHEREAS, as described in the Prospectus, and in accordance with the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as the same may be amended from time to time (the “**Charter**”), \$275,000,000 of the proceeds of the Offering and the sale of the Private Placement Warrants (as defined in the Underwriting Agreement) (or \$316,250,000, if the Underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised in full) will be delivered to the Trustee to be deposited and held in a segregated trust account located at all times in the United States (the “**Trust Account**”) for the benefit of the Company and the holders of the Common Stock included in the Units issued in the Offering as hereinafter provided (the amount to be delivered to the Trustee (and any interest subsequently earned thereon) is referred to herein as the “**Property**,” the stockholders for whose benefit the Trustee shall hold the Property will be referred to as the “**Public Stockholders**,” and the Public Stockholders and the Company will be referred to together as the “**Beneficiaries**”); and

WHEREAS, pursuant to the Underwriting Agreement, a portion of the Property equal to \$9,625,000, or \$11,068,750 if the Underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised in full, is attributable to deferred underwriting discounts and commissions that may be payable by the Company to the Underwriters upon the consummation of the Business Combination (as defined below) (the “**Deferred Discount**”); and

WHEREAS, the Company and the Trustee desire to enter into this Agreement to set forth the terms and conditions pursuant to which the Trustee shall hold the Property.

NOW THEREFORE, IT IS AGREED:

1. Agreements and Covenants of Trustee. The Trustee hereby agrees and covenants to:

(a) Hold the Property in trust for the Beneficiaries in accordance with the terms of this Agreement in the Trust Account established by the Trustee in the United States at J.P. Morgan Chase Bank, N.A., (or at another U.S.-chartered commercial bank with consolidated assets of \$100 billion or more) in the United States, maintained by the Trustee and at a brokerage institution selected by the Trustee that is reasonably satisfactory to the Company;

(b) Manage, supervise and administer the Trust Account subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein;

(c) In a timely manner, upon the written instruction of the Company, invest and reinvest the Property solely in United States government securities within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, having a maturity of 185 days or less, or in money market funds meeting the conditions of paragraphs (d)(1), (d)(2), (d)(3) and (d)(4) of Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (or any successor rule), which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations, as determined by the Company; the Trustee may not invest in any other securities or assets, it being understood that the Trust Account will earn no interest while account funds are uninvested awaiting the Company’s instructions hereunder and the Trustee may earn bank credits or other consideration during such periods;

---

- (d) Collect and receive, when due, all principal, interest or other income arising from the Property, which shall become part of the “**Property**,” as such term is used herein;
- (e) Promptly notify the Company and the Representative of all communications received by the Trustee with respect to any Property requiring action by the Company;
- (f) Supply any necessary information or documents as may be requested by the Company (or its authorized agents) in connection with the Company’s preparation of the tax returns relating to assets held in the Trust Account or in connection with the preparation or completion of the audit of the Company’s financial statements by the Company’s auditors;
- (g) Participate in any plan or proceeding for protecting or enforcing any right or interest arising from the Property if, as and when instructed by the Company to do so;
- (h) Render to the Company monthly written statements of the activities of, and amounts in, the Trust Account reflecting all receipts and disbursements of the Trust Account;
- (i) Commence liquidation of the Trust Account only after and promptly after (x) receipt of, and only in accordance with the terms of, a letter from the Company (“**Termination Letter**”) in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as either Exhibit A or Exhibit B, as applicable, signed on behalf of the Company by the Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, President, Executive Vice President, Vice President, Secretary or Chairman of the board of directors of the Company (the “**Board**”) or other authorized officer of the Company, and, in the case of Exhibit A, acknowledged and agreed to by the Representative, and complete the liquidation of the Trust Account and distribute the Property in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable, and less up to \$100,000 of interest that may be released to the Company to pay dissolution expenses), only as directed in the Termination Letter and the other documents referred to therein, or (y) upon the date which is, the later of (1) 24 months after the closing of the Offering and (2) such later date as may be approved by the Company’s stockholders in accordance with the Charter if a Termination Letter has not been received by the Trustee prior to such date, in which case the Trust Account shall be liquidated in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Termination Letter attached as Exhibit B and the Property in the Trust Account, including interest (which interest shall be net of taxes payable, and less up to \$100,000 of interest that may be released to the Company to pay dissolution expenses) shall be distributed to the Public Stockholders of record as of such date; provided, however, that the Trustee has no obligation to monitor or question the Company’s position that an allocation has been made for taxes payable;
- (j) Upon written request from the Company, which may be given from time to time in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit C, withdraw from the Trust Account and distribute to the Company the amount of interest earned on the Property requested by the Company to cover any tax obligation, including any franchise tax obligations, owed by the Company as a result of assets of the Company or interest or other income earned on the Property, which amount shall be delivered directly to the Company by electronic funds transfer or other method of prompt payment, and the Company shall forward such payment to the relevant taxing authority, as applicable; provided, however, that to the extent there is not sufficient cash in the Trust Account to pay such tax obligation, the Trustee shall liquidate such assets held in the Trust Account as shall be designated by the Company in writing to make such distribution, so long as there is no reduction in the principal amount per share initially deposited in the Trust Account; provided, further, that if the tax to be paid is a franchise tax, the written request by the Company to make such distribution shall be accompanied by a copy of the franchise tax bill from the State of Delaware for the Company and a written statement from the principal financial officer of the Company setting forth the actual amount payable (it being acknowledged and agreed that any such amount in excess of interest income earned on the Property shall not be payable from the Trust Account). The written request of the Company referenced above shall constitute presumptive evidence that the Company is entitled to said funds, and the Trustee shall have no responsibility to look beyond said request;
- (k) Upon written request from the Company, which may be given from time to time in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit D, the Trustee shall distribute to the remitting brokers on behalf of Public Stockholders redeeming shares of Common Stock the amount required to pay for redeemed shares of Common Stock from Public Stockholders in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Charter (i) modify the substance or timing of the Company’s obligation to allow redemption in connection with a Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold in the Offering if the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Company’s Charter or (ii) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders’ rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity. The written request of the Company referenced above shall constitute presumptive evidence that the Company is entitled to distribute said funds, and the Trustee shall have no responsibility to look beyond said request; and



(l) Not make any withdrawals or distributions from the Trust Account other than pursuant to Sections 1(i), 1(j) or 1(k) above.

2. Agreements and Covenants of the Company. The Company hereby agrees and covenants to:

(a) Give all instructions to the Trustee hereunder in writing, signed by the Company's Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, President, Executive Vice President, Vice President or Secretary. In addition, except with respect to its duties under Sections 1(i), 1(j) and 1(k) hereof, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on, and shall be protected in relying on, any verbal or telephonic advice or instruction which it, in good faith and with reasonable care, believes to be given by any one of the persons authorized above to give written instructions, provided that the Company shall promptly confirm such instructions in writing;

(b) Subject to Section 4 hereof, hold the Trustee harmless and indemnify the Trustee from and against any and all expenses, including reasonable counsel fees and disbursements, or losses suffered by the Trustee in connection with any action taken by it hereunder and in connection with any action, suit or other proceeding brought against the Trustee involving any claim, or in connection with any claim or demand, which in any way arises out of or relates to this Agreement, the services of the Trustee hereunder, or the Property or any interest earned on the Property, except for expenses and losses resulting from the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. Promptly after the receipt by the Trustee of notice of demand or claim or the commencement of any action, suit or proceeding, pursuant to which the Trustee intends to seek indemnification under this Section 2(b), it shall notify the Company in writing of such claim (hereinafter referred to as the "**Indemnified Claim**"). The Trustee shall have the right to conduct and manage the defense against such Indemnified Claim; provided that the Trustee shall obtain the consent of the Company with respect to the selection of counsel, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Trustee may not agree to settle any Indemnified Claim without the prior written consent of the Company, which such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Company may participate in such action with its own counsel;

(c) Pay the Trustee the fees set forth on Schedule A hereto, including an initial acceptance fee, annual administration fee, and transaction processing fee which fees shall be subject to modification by the parties from time to time. It is expressly understood that the Property shall not be used to pay such fees unless the disbursements are made to the Company pursuant to Section 1(i) solely in connection with the completion of a Business Combination (defined below). The Company shall pay the Trustee the initial acceptance fee and the first annual administration fee at the consummation of the Offering and thereafter on the anniversary of the Effective Date. The Trustee shall refund the Company the annual administration fee (on a pro rata basis) with respect to any period after the liquidation of the Trust Account. The Company shall not be responsible for any other fees or charges of the Trustee except as set forth in this Section 2(c), Schedule A and as may be provided in Section 2(b) hereof;

(d) In connection with any vote of the Company's stockholders regarding a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination involving the Company and one or more businesses (the "**Business Combination**"), provide to the Trustee an affidavit or certificate of the inspector of elections for the stockholder meeting (which inspector of elections may be the Trustee) verifying the vote of such stockholders regarding such Business Combination;

(e) Provide the Representative with a copy of any Termination Letter(s) and/or any other correspondence that is sent to the Trustee with respect to any proposed withdrawal from the Trust Account promptly after it issues the same;

(f) Instruct the Trustee to make only those distributions that are permitted under this Agreement, and refrain from instructing the Trustee to make any distributions that are not permitted under this Agreement;

(g) Expressly provide in any Instruction Letter (as defined in Exhibit A) delivered in connection with a Termination Letter in the form of Exhibit A that the Deferred Discount be paid directly to the account or accounts directed by the Representative on behalf of the Underwriters prior to any transfer of the funds held in the Trust Account to the Company or any other person; and

(h) Within four (4) business days after the Underwriters exercise the over-allotment option (or any unexercised portion thereof) or such over-allotment option expires, provide the Trustee with a notice in writing of the total amount of the Deferred Discount.

3. Limitations of Liability. The Trustee shall have no responsibility or liability to:

(a) Imply obligations, perform duties, inquire or otherwise be subject to the provisions of any agreement or document other than this Agreement and that which is expressly set forth herein;

(b) Take any action with respect to the Property, other than as directed in Section 1 hereof, and the Trustee shall have no liability to any third party except for liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct;

(c) Institute any proceeding for the collection of any principal and income arising from, or institute, appear in or defend any proceeding of any kind with respect to, any of the Property unless and until it shall have received instructions from the Company given as provided herein to do so and the Company shall have advanced or guaranteed to it funds sufficient to pay any expenses incident thereto;

(d) Refund any depreciation in principal of any Property;

(e) Assume that the authority of any person designated by the Company to give instructions hereunder shall not be continuing unless provided otherwise in such designation, or unless the Company shall have delivered a written revocation of such authority to the Trustee;

(f) The other parties hereto or to anyone else for any action taken or omitted by it, or any action suffered by it to be taken or omitted, in good faith and in the Trustee's best judgment, except for the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. The Trustee may rely conclusively and shall be protected in acting upon any order, notice, demand, certificate, opinion or advice of counsel (including counsel chosen by the Trustee, which counsel may be the Company's counsel), statement, instrument, report or other paper or document (not only as to its due execution and the validity and effectiveness of its provisions, but also as to the truth and acceptability of any information therein contained) which the Trustee believes, in good faith and with reasonable care, to be genuine and to be signed or presented by the proper person or persons. The Trustee shall not be bound by any notice or demand, or any waiver, modification, termination or rescission of this Agreement or any of the terms hereof, unless evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Trustee, signed by the proper party or parties and, if the duties or rights of the Trustee are affected, unless it shall give its prior written consent thereto;

(g) Verify the accuracy of the information contained in the Registration Statement;

(h) Provide any assurance that any Business Combination entered into by the Company or any other action taken by the Company is as contemplated by the Registration Statement;

(i) File information returns with respect to the Trust Account with any local, state or federal taxing authority or provide periodic written statements to the Company documenting the taxes payable by the Company, if any, relating to any interest income earned on the Property;

(j) Prepare, execute and file tax reports, income or other tax returns and pay any taxes with respect to any income generated by, and activities relating to, the Trust Account, regardless of whether such tax is payable by the Trust Account or the Company, including, but not limited to, franchise and income tax obligations, except pursuant to Section 1(j) hereof; or

(k) Verify calculations, qualify or otherwise approve the Company's written requests for distributions pursuant to Sections 1(i), 1(j) or 1(k) hereof.

4. Trust Account Waiver. The Trustee has no right of set-off or any right, title, interest or claim of any kind ("**Claim**") to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account, and hereby irrevocably waives any Claim to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account that it may have now or in the future. In the event the Trustee has any Claim against the Company under this Agreement, including, without limitation, under Section 2(b) or Section 2(c) hereof, the Trustee shall pursue such Claim solely against the Company and its assets outside the Trust Account and not against the Property or any monies in the Trust Account.

5. Termination. This Agreement shall terminate as follows:

(a) If the Trustee gives written notice to the Company that it desires to resign under this Agreement, the Company shall use its reasonable efforts to locate a successor trustee, pending which the Trustee shall continue to act in accordance with this Agreement. At such time that the Company notifies the Trustee that a successor trustee has been appointed by the Company and has agreed to become subject to the terms of this Agreement, the Trustee shall transfer the management of the Trust Account to the successor trustee, including but not limited to the transfer of copies of the reports and statements relating to the Trust Account, whereupon this Agreement shall terminate; provided, however, that in the event that the Company does not locate a successor trustee within ninety (90) days of receipt of the resignation notice from the Trustee, the Trustee may submit an application to have the Property deposited with any court in the State of New York or with the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York and upon such deposit, the Trustee shall be immune from any liability whatsoever;

(b) At such time that the Trustee has completed the liquidation of the Trust Account and its obligations in accordance with the provisions of Section 1(i) hereof (which section may not be amended under any circumstances) and distributed the Property in accordance with the provisions of the Termination Letter, this Agreement shall terminate except with respect to Section 2(b) and Section 4; or

(c) If the Offering is not consummated within ten (10) business days of the date of this Agreement, in which case any funds received by the Trustee from the Company or MCAP Acquisition, LLC, as applicable, shall be returned promptly following the receipt by the Trustee of written instructions from the Company.

6. Miscellaneous.

(a) The Company and the Trustee each acknowledge that the Trustee will follow the security procedures set forth below with respect to funds transferred from the Trust Account. The Company and the Trustee will each restrict access to confidential information relating to such security procedures to authorized persons. Each party must notify the other party immediately if it has reason to believe unauthorized persons may have obtained access to such confidential information, or of any change in its authorized personnel. In executing funds transfers, the Trustee shall rely upon all information supplied to it by the Company, including, account names, account numbers, and all other identifying information relating to a Beneficiary, Beneficiary's bank or intermediary bank. Except for any liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct, the Trustee shall not be liable for any loss, liability or expense resulting from any error in the information or transmission of the funds.

(b) This Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. This Agreement may be executed in several original or facsimile counterparts, each one of which shall constitute an original, and together shall constitute but one instrument.

(c) This Agreement contains the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof. This Agreement or any provision hereof may only be changed, amended or modified (other than to correct a typographical error) by a writing signed by each of the parties hereto.

(d) This Agreement or any provision hereof may only be changed, amended or modified pursuant to Section 6(c) hereof with the Consent of the Stockholders. For purposes of this Section 6(d), the “*Consent of the Stockholders*” means (i) receipt by the Trustee of a certificate from the inspector of elections of the stockholder meeting certifying that the Company’s stockholders of record as of a record date established in accordance with Section 213(a) of the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended (or any successor rule), who hold sixty-five percent (65%) or more of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock and Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company voting together as a single class, have voted in favor of such change, amendment or modification, or (ii) the Company’s stockholders of record as of the record date who hold sixty-five percent (65%) or more of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock and Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company voting together as a single class, have delivered to the Trustee a signed writing approving such change, amendment or modification. No such amendment will affect any Public Stockholder who has otherwise indicated his, her or its election to redeem his, her or its shares of Common Stock in connection with a stockholder vote sought to amend this Agreement, including a corresponding change to the Charter. Except for any liability arising out of the Trustee’s gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct, the Trustee may rely conclusively on the certification from the inspector or elections referenced above and shall be relieved of all liability to any party for executing the proposed amendment in reliance thereon.

(e) The parties hereto consent to the jurisdiction and venue of any state or federal court located in the City of New York, State of New York, for purposes of resolving any disputes hereunder. AS TO ANY CLAIM, CROSS-CLAIM OR COUNTERCLAIM IN ANY WAY RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT, EACH PARTY WAIVES THE RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY.

(f) Any notice, consent or request to be given in connection with any of the terms or provisions of this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be sent by express mail or similar private courier service, by certified mail (return receipt requested), by hand delivery or by electronic mail:

if to the Trustee, to:

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, NY 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez  
Email: fwolf@continentalstock.com  
Email: cgonzalez@continentalstock.com

if to the Company, to:

MCAP Acquisition Corporation  
311 South Wacker Drive, Suite 6400  
Chicago, Illinois 60606  
Attn: Theodore L. Koenig

in each case, with copies to:

Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough LLP  
101 Constitution Avenue NW  
Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20001  
Attn: Jonathan H. Talcott, Esq. and E. Peter Strand, Esq.  
Email: jon.talcott@nelsonmullins.com and peter.strand@nelsonmullins.com

and:

Greenberg Traurig, LLP  
1750 Tysons Boulevard, Suite 1000  
McLean, VA 22102  
Attn: Alan I. Annex, Esq. and Jason T. Simon, Esq.  
Email: annexa@gtlaw.com and simonj@gtlaw.com

(g) Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby represents that it has the full right and power and has been duly authorized to enter into this Agreement and to perform its respective obligations as contemplated hereunder. The Trustee acknowledges and agrees that it shall not make any claims or proceed against the Trust Account, including by way of set-off, and shall not be entitled to any funds in the Trust Account under any circumstance.

(h) This Agreement is the joint product of the Trustee and the Company and each provision hereof has been subject to the mutual consultation, negotiation and agreement of such parties and shall not be construed for or against any party hereto.

(i) This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute one and the same instrument. Delivery of a signed counterpart of this Agreement by facsimile or electronic transmission shall constitute valid and sufficient delivery thereof.

(j) Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby acknowledges and agrees that the Representative on behalf of the Underwriters is a third party beneficiary of this Agreement.

(k) Except as specified herein, no party to this Agreement may assign its rights or delegate its obligations hereunder to any other person or entity.

*[Signature Page Follows]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have duly executed this Investment Management Trust Agreement as of the date first written above.

**CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY, as  
Trustee**

By: /s/ Francis Wolf

Name: Francis Wolf

Title: Vice President

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Scott A. Marienau

Name: Scott A. Marienau

Title: Chief Financial Officer

[Signature Page to Investment Management Trust Agreement]

---

**SCHEDULE A**

<b>Fee Item</b>	<b>Time and method of payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Initial set-up fee	Initial closing of Offering by wire transfer	\$ 3,500.00
Trustee administration fee	First year, initial closing of Offering by wire transfer, thereafter on the anniversary of the effective date of the Offering by wire transfer or check	\$ 10,000.00
Transaction processing fee for disbursements to Company under Sections 1(i), 1(j) and 1(k)	Billed to Company following disbursement made to Company under Sections 1(i), 1(j) and 1(k)	\$ 250.00
Paying Agent services as required pursuant to Sections 1(i) and 1(k)	Billed to Company upon delivery of service pursuant to Sections 1(i) and 1(k)	Prevailing rates

---

EXHIBIT A

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account - Termination Letter

Dear Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(i) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the “*Company*”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the “*Trustee*”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2021 (the “*Trust Agreement*”), this is to advise you that the Company has entered into an agreement with [\_\_\_\_\_] (the “*Target Business*”) to consummate a business combination with the Target Business (the “*Business Combination*”) on or about [insert date]. The Company shall notify you at least seventy-two (72) hours in advance (or such shorter time as you may agree) of the actual date of the consummation of the Business Combination (the “*Consummation Date*”). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to commence to liquidate all of the assets of the Trust Account and to transfer the proceeds to a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries to the effect that, on the Consummation Date, all of the funds held in the Trust Account will be immediately available for transfer to the account or accounts that the Company shall direct on the Consummation Date (including as directed to it by the Representative on behalf of the Underwriters (with respect to the Deferred Discount)). It is acknowledged and agreed that while the funds are on deposit in the trust operating account at J.P. Morgan Chase Bank, N.A. awaiting distribution, neither the Company nor the Representative will earn any interest or dividends.

On the Consummation Date (i) counsel for the Company shall deliver to you written notification that the Business Combination has been consummated, or will be consummated substantially concurrently with your transfer of funds to the accounts as directed by the Company (the “*Notification*”) and (ii) the Company shall deliver to you (a) a certificate of the Chief Executive Officer, which verifies that the Business Combination has been approved by a vote of the Company’s stockholders, if a vote is held and (b) a joint written instruction signed by the Company and the Representative with respect to the transfer of the funds held in the Trust Account, including payment of the amounts owed to public stockholders who have properly exercised their redemption rights and payment of the Deferred Discount directly to the account or accounts directed by the Representative from the Trust Account (the “*Instruction Letter*”). You are hereby directed and authorized to transfer the funds held in the Trust Account immediately upon your receipt of the Notification and the Instruction Letter, in accordance with the terms of the Instruction Letter. In the event that certain deposits held in the Trust Account may not be liquidated by the Consummation Date without penalty, you will notify the Company in writing of the same and the Company shall direct you as to whether such funds should remain in the Trust Account and be distributed after the Consummation Date to the Company. Upon the distribution of all the funds, net of any payments necessary for reasonable unreimbursed expenses related to liquidating the Trust Account, your obligations under the Trust Agreement shall be terminated.



In the event that the Business Combination is not consummated on the Consummation Date described in the notice thereof and we have not notified you on or before the original Consummation Date of a new Consummation Date, then upon receipt by the Trustee of written instructions from the Company, the funds held in the Trust Account shall be reinvested as provided in Section 1(c) of the Trust Agreement on the business day immediately following the Consummation Date as set forth in such notice as soon thereafter as possible.

Very truly yours,

MCAP Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

Acknowledged and Agreed:

Cowen and Company, LLC

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

EXHIBIT B

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account - Termination Letter

Dear Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(i) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the “*Company*”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the “*Trustee*”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2021 (the “*Trust Agreement*”), this is to advise you that the Company did not effect a business combination with a Target Business (the “*Business Combination*”) within the time frame specified in the Company’s Charter, as described in the Company’s Prospectus relating to the Offering. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to liquidate all of the assets in the Trust Account and transfer the total proceeds into a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries to await distribution to the Public Stockholders. The Company has selected [\_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_]<sup>1</sup> as the effective date for the purpose of determining when the Public Stockholders will be entitled to receive their share of the liquidation proceeds. You agree to be the Paying Agent of record and, in your separate capacity as Paying Agent, agree to distribute said funds directly to the Company’s Public Stockholders in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement and the Company’s Charter. Upon the distribution of all the funds, net of any payments necessary for reasonable unreimbursed expenses related to liquidating the Trust Account, your obligations under the Trust Agreement shall be terminated, except to the extent otherwise provided in Section 1(i) of the Trust Agreement.

Very truly yours,

MCAP Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

---

<sup>1</sup> 24 months from the closing of the Offering or at a later date, if extended.

EXHIBIT C

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account - Withdrawal Instruction

Dear Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(j) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the “*Company*”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the “*Trustee*”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2021 (the “*Trust Agreement*”), the Company hereby requests that you deliver to the Company \$[\_\_\_\_\_] of the interest income earned on the Property as of the date hereof. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

The Company needs such funds to pay for the tax obligations as set forth on the attached tax return or tax statement. In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, you are hereby directed and authorized to transfer (via wire transfer) such funds promptly upon your receipt of this letter to the Company’s operating account at:

[WIRE INSTRUCTION INFORMATION]

Very truly yours,

MCAP Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

EXHIBIT D

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf and Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account - Stockholder Redemption Withdrawal Instruction

Dear Mr. Wolf and Ms. Gonzalez:

Pursuant to Section 1(k) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between MCAP Acquisition Corporation (the "**Company**") and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the "**Trustee**"), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2021 (the "**Trust Agreement**"), the Company hereby requests that you deliver to the redeeming Public Stockholders of the Company \$[\_\_\_\_\_] of the principal and interest income earned on the Property as of the date hereof to a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries for distribution to the Public Stockholders who have requested redemption of their shares of Common Stock. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

The Company needs such funds to pay its Public Stockholders who have properly elected to have their shares of Common Stock redeemed by the Company in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Company's Charter to (i) modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to allow redemption in connection with a Business Combination or to redeem 100% of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold in the Offering if the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Company's Charter or (ii) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity. As such, you are hereby directed and authorized to transfer (via wire transfer) such funds promptly upon your receipt of this letter.

Very truly yours,

MCAP Acquisition Corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

cc: Cowen and Company, LLC

## REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT

THIS REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT (this “**Agreement**”), dated as of February 25, 2021, is made and entered into by and among MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), MCAP Acquisition, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Sponsor**”), and the undersigned parties listed under Holder on the signature page hereto (each such party, together with the Sponsor, members of the Sponsor and any person or entity who hereafter becomes a party to this Agreement pursuant to Section 5.2 of this Agreement, a “**Holder**” and collectively the “**Holders**”).

## RECITALS

**WHEREAS**, the Sponsor owns 7,906,250 shares of the Company’s Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Founder Shares**”);

**WHEREAS**, up to an aggregate of 1,031,250 Founder Shares are subject to forfeiture by the Sponsor if the over-allotment option in connection with the Company’s initial public offering is not exercised in full;

**WHEREAS**, the Founder Shares are convertible into shares of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), at the time of the initial Business Combination (as defined below) on a one-for-one basis, subject to adjustment, on the terms and conditions provided in the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as may be amended from time to time;

**WHEREAS**, on February 25, 2021, the Company and the Sponsor entered into that certain Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement, pursuant to which the Sponsor agreed to purchase an aggregate of 5,433,333 warrants (or up to 5,983,333 warrants if the over-allotment option in connection with the Company’s initial public offering is exercised in full) (the “**Private Placement Warrants**”) in a private placement transaction occurring simultaneously with the closing of the Company’s initial public offering, each Private Placement Warrant entitling the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share;

**WHEREAS**, in order to finance the Company’s transaction costs in connection with an initial Business Combination, the Sponsor, an affiliate of the Sponsor, or certain of the Company’s officers and directors may loan to the Company funds as the Company may require, of which up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into warrants (“**Working Capital Warrants**”) at a price of \$1.50 per warrant; and

**WHEREAS**, the Company and the Holders desire to enter into this Agreement, pursuant to which the Company shall grant the Holders certain registration rights with respect to certain securities of the Company, as set forth in this Agreement.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, in consideration of the mutual representations, covenants and agreements contained herein, and certain other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto, intending to be legally bound, hereby agree as follows:

ARTICLE I  
DEFINITIONS

1.1 **Definitions.** The terms defined in this Article I shall, for all purposes of this Agreement, have the respective meanings set forth below:

“**Adverse Disclosure**” shall mean any public disclosure of material non-public information, which disclosure, in the good faith judgment of the Chief Executive Officer or any principal financial officer of the Company, after consultation with counsel to the Company, (i) would be required to be made in any Registration Statement or Prospectus in order for the applicable Registration Statement or Prospectus not to contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements contained therein (in the case of any prospectus and any preliminary prospectus, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading, (ii) would not be required to be made at such time if the Registration Statement were not being filed, and (iii) the Company has a bona fide business purpose for not making such information public.

---

“**Agreement**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Board**” shall mean the Board of Directors of the Company.

“**Business Combination**” shall mean any merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses, involving the Company.

“**Commission**” shall mean the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.

“**Common Stock**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Company**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Demand Registration**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Demanding Holders**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Exchange Act**” shall mean the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“**Form S-1**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Form S-3**” shall have the meaning given in Section 2.3.

“**Founder Shares**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto and shall be deemed to include the shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion thereof.

“**Founder Shares Lock-Up Period**” shall mean, with respect to the Founder Shares, the period ending on the earlier of (a) one year after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination and (b) subsequent to the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination, (x) if the last reported sale price of the Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock capitalizations, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company’s initial Business Combination or (y) the date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange or other similar transaction after the Company’s initial Business Combination that results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property.

“**Founders**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Holdings**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Insider Letter**” shall mean that certain letter agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and among the Company, the Sponsor and each of the Company’s officers and directors.

“**Maximum Number of Securities**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.4.

“**Misstatement**” shall mean an untrue statement of a material fact or an omission to state a material fact required to be stated in a Registration Statement or Prospectus, or necessary to make the statements in a Registration Statement or Prospectus in the light of the circumstances under which they were made not misleading.

“**Permitted Transferees**” shall mean any person or entity to whom a Holder of Registrable Securities is permitted to transfer such Registrable Securities prior to the expiration of the Founder Shares Lock-Up Period or Private Placement Lock-Up Period, as the case may be, under the Insider Letter and any other applicable agreement between such Holder and the Company, and to any transferee thereafter.

“**Piggyback Registration**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.2.1.

“**Private Placement Lock-Up Period**” shall mean, with respect to Private Placement Warrants, including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise or conversion of the Private Placement Warrants and that are held by the initial purchasers of the Private Placement Warrants or their Permitted Transferees, the period ending 30 days after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination.

“**Private Placement Warrants**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Pro Rata**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.4.

“**Prospectus**” shall mean the prospectus included in any Registration Statement, as supplemented by any and all prospectus supplements and as amended by any and all post-effective amendments and including all material incorporated by reference in such prospectus.

“**Registrable Security**” shall mean (a) the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the conversion of any Founder Shares, (b) the Private Placement Warrants and any shares of the Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any Private Placement Warrant, (c) any outstanding shares of Common Stock or any other equity security (including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any other equity security) of the Company held by a Holder as of the date of this Agreement, (d) any equity securities (including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any such equity security) of the Company issuable upon conversion of any working capital loans in an amount up to \$1,500,000 made to the Company by a Holder, and (e) any other equity security of the Company issued or issuable with respect to any such shares of Common Stock by way of a stock dividend or stock split or in connection with a combination of shares, recapitalization, merger, consolidation or reorganization; provided, however, that, as to any particular Registrable Security, such securities shall cease to be Registrable Securities when: (A) a Registration Statement with respect to the sale of such securities shall have become effective under the Securities Act and such securities shall have been sold, transferred, disposed of or exchanged in accordance with such Registration Statement; (B) such securities shall have been otherwise transferred, new certificates for such securities not bearing a legend restricting further transfer shall have been delivered by the Company and subsequent public distribution of such securities shall not require registration under the Securities Act; (C) such securities shall have ceased to be outstanding; (D) such securities may be sold without registration pursuant to Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission) (but with no volume or other restrictions or limitations); or (E) such securities have been sold to, or through, a broker, dealer or underwriter in a public distribution or other public securities transaction.

“**Registration**” shall mean a registration effected by preparing and filing a registration statement or similar document in compliance with the requirements of the Securities Act, and the applicable rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, and such registration statement becoming effective.

“**Registration Expenses**” shall mean the out-of-pocket expenses of a Registration, including, without limitation, the following:

(A) all registration and filing fees (including fees with respect to filings required to be made with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc.) and any securities exchange on which the Common Stock is then listed;

(B) fees and expenses of compliance with securities or blue sky laws (including reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters in connection with blue sky qualifications of Registrable Securities);

(C) printing, messenger, telephone and delivery expenses;

(D) reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Company;

(E) reasonable fees and disbursements of all independent registered public accountants of the Company incurred specifically in connection with such Registration; and

(F) reasonable fees and expenses of one (1) legal counsel selected by the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration to be registered for offer and sale in the applicable Registration.

“**Registration Statement**” shall mean any registration statement that covers the Registrable Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement, including the Prospectus included in such registration statement, amendments (including post-effective amendments) and supplements to such registration statement, and all exhibits to and all material incorporated by reference in such registration statement.

“**Requesting Holder**” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“**Securities Act**” shall mean the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“**Shelf**” shall have the meaning given in Section 2.3.

“**Sponsor**” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“**Working Capital Warrants**” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“**Underwriter**” shall mean a securities dealer who purchases any Registrable Securities as principal in an Underwritten Offering and not as part of such dealer’s market-making activities.

“**Underwritten Registration**” or “**Underwritten Offering**” shall mean a Registration in which securities of the Company are sold to an Underwriter in a firm commitment underwriting for distribution to the public.

## ARTICLE II REGISTRATIONS

### 2.1 Demand Registration.

2.1.1 Request for Registration. Subject to the provisions of subsection 2.1.4 and Section 2.4 hereof, at any time and from time to time on or after the date the Company consummates the initial Business Combination (i) the Holders of at least thirty percent (30%) in interest of the then-outstanding number of Registrable Securities (such Holders, the “**Demanding Holders**”) may make a written demand for Registration under the Securities Act of all or part of their Registrable Securities, which written demand shall describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such Registration and the intended method(s) of distribution thereof (such written demand a “**Demand Registration**”). The Company shall, within ten (10) days of the Company’s receipt of the Demand Registration, notify, in writing, all other Holders of Registrable Securities of such demand, and each Holder of Registrable Securities who thereafter wishes to include all or a portion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration (each such Holder that includes all or a portion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in such Registration, a “**Requesting Holder**”) shall so notify the Company, in writing, within five (5) days after the receipt by the Holder of the notice from the Company. Upon receipt by the Company of any such written notification from a Requesting Holder(s) to the Company, such Requesting Holder(s) shall be entitled to have their Registrable Securities included in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration and the Company shall effect, as soon thereafter as practicable, the Registration of all Registrable Securities requested by the Demanding Holder(s) and Requesting Holder(s) pursuant to such Demand Registration, including by filing a Registration Statement relating thereto as soon as practicable, but not more than forty five (45) days immediately after the Company’s receipt of the Demand Registration. Under no circumstances shall the Company be obligated to effect more than an aggregate of three (3) Registrations pursuant to a Demand Registration under this subsection 2.1.1 with respect to any or all Registrable Securities; provided, however, that a Registration shall not be counted for such purposes unless a Form S-1 or any similar long-form registration statement that may be available at such time (“**Form S-1**”) has become effective and all of the Registrable Securities requested by the Requesting Holders to be registered on behalf of the Requesting Holders in such Form S-1 Registration have been sold, in accordance with Section 3.1 of this Agreement.

2.1.2 Effective Registration. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection 2.1.1 above or any other part of this Agreement, a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration shall not count as a Registration unless and until (i) the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration has been declared effective by the Commission and (ii) the Company has complied with all of its obligations under this Agreement with respect thereto; provided, further, that if, after such Registration Statement has been declared effective, an offering of Registrable Securities in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration is subsequently interfered with by any stop order or injunction of the Commission, federal or state court or any other governmental agency the Registration Statement with respect to such Registration shall be deemed not to have been declared effective, unless and until, (i) such stop order or injunction is removed, rescinded or otherwise terminated and (ii) a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating such Demand Registration thereafter affirmatively elect to continue with such Registration and accordingly notify the Company in writing, but in no event later than five (5) days, of such election; provided, further, that the Company shall not be obligated or required to file another Registration Statement until the Registration Statement that has been previously filed with respect to a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration becomes effective or is subsequently terminated.



2.1.3 Underwritten Offering. Subject to the provisions of subsection 2.1.4 and Section 2.4 hereof, if a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders so advise the Company as part of their Demand Registration that the offering of the Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration shall be in the form of an Underwritten Offering, then the right of such Demanding Holder or Requesting Holder (if any) to include its Registrable Securities in such Registration shall be conditioned upon such Holder's participation in such Underwritten Offering and the inclusion of such Holder's Registrable Securities in such Underwritten Offering to the extent provided herein. All such Holders proposing to distribute their Registrable Securities through an Underwritten Offering under this subsection 2.1.3 shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the Underwriter(s) selected for such Underwritten Offering by the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating the Demand Registration.

2.1.4 Reduction of Underwritten Offering. If the managing Underwriter or Underwriters in an Underwritten Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration, in good faith, advises the Company, the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) in writing that the dollar amount or number of Registrable Securities that the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) desire to sell, taken together with all other Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell and the Common Stock, if any, as to which a Registration has been requested pursuant to separate written contractual piggy-back registration rights held by any other stockholders who desire to sell, exceeds the maximum dollar amount or maximum number of equity securities that can be sold in the Underwritten Offering without adversely affecting the proposed offering price, the timing, the distribution method, or the probability of success of such offering (such maximum dollar amount or maximum number of such securities, as applicable, the "**Maximum Number of Securities**"), then the Company shall include in such Underwritten Offering, as follows: (i) first, the Registrable Securities of the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) (pro rata based on the respective number of Registrable Securities that each Demanding Holder and Requesting Holder (if any) has requested be included in such Underwritten Registration and the aggregate number of Registrable Securities that the Demanding Holders and Requesting Holders have requested be included in such Underwritten Registration (such proportion is referred to herein as "**Pro Rata**")) that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (ii) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (i), the Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (iii) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (i) and (ii), the Common Stock or other equity securities of other persons or entities that the Company is obligated to register in a Registration pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with such persons and that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities.

2.1.5 Demand Registration Withdrawal. The Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration pursuant to a Registration under subsection 2.1.1 shall have the right to withdraw from a Registration pursuant to such Demand Registration for any or no reason whatsoever upon written notification to the Company and the Underwriter or Underwriters (if any) of their intention to withdraw from such Registration prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to the Registration of their Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration (or in the case of an Underwritten Registration pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, at least two (2) business days prior to the time of pricing of the applicable offering). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, (i) the Company may effect any Underwritten Registration pursuant to any then effective Registration Statement, including a Form S-3, that is then available for such offering and (ii) the Company shall be responsible for the Registration Expenses incurred in connection with a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration prior to its withdrawal under this subsection 2.1.5.

## 2.2 Piggyback Registration.

2.2.1 Piggyback Rights. If, at any time on or after the date the Company consummates the initial Business Combination, the Company proposes to file a Registration Statement under the Securities Act with respect to an offering of equity securities, or securities or other obligations exercisable or exchangeable for, or convertible into equity securities, for its own account or for the account of stockholders of the Company (or by the Company and by the stockholders of the Company including, without limitation, pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof), other than a Registration Statement (i) filed in connection with any employee stock option or other benefit plan, (ii) for an exchange offer or offering of securities solely to the Company's existing stockholders, (iii) for an offering of debt that is convertible into equity securities of the Company or (iv) for a dividend reinvestment plan, then the Company shall give written notice of such proposed filing to all of the Holders of Registrable Securities as soon as practicable but not less than ten (10) days before the anticipated filing date of such Registration Statement, which notice shall (A) describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such offering, the intended method(s) of distribution, and the name of the proposed managing Underwriter or Underwriters, if any, in such offering, and (B) offer to all of the Holders of Registrable Securities the opportunity to register the sale of such number of Registrable Securities as such Holders may request in writing within five (5) days after receipt of such written notice (such Registration a "**Piggyback Registration**"). The Company shall, in good faith, cause such Registrable Securities to be included in such Piggyback Registration and shall use its best efforts to cause the managing Underwriter or Underwriters of a proposed Underwritten Offering to permit the Registrable Securities requested by the Holders pursuant to this subsection 2.2.1 to be included in a Piggyback Registration on the same terms and conditions as any similar securities of the Company included in such Registration and to permit the sale or other disposition of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended method(s) of distribution thereof. All such Holders proposing to distribute their Registrable Securities through an Underwritten Offering under this subsection 2.2.1 shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the Underwriter(s) selected for such Underwritten Offering by the Company.

2.2.2 Reduction of Piggyback Registration. If the managing Underwriter or Underwriters in an Underwritten Registration that is to be a Piggyback Registration, in good faith, advises the Company and the Holders of Registrable Securities participating in the Piggyback Registration in writing that the dollar amount or number of the shares of the equity securities of the Company that the Company desires to sell, taken together with (i) the shares of equity securities of the Company, if any, as to which Registration has been demanded pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with persons or entities other than the Holders of Registrable Securities hereunder, (ii) the Registrable Securities as to which registration has been requested pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof, and (iii) the shares of equity securities of the Company, if any, as to which Registration has been requested pursuant to separate written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, exceeds the Maximum Number of Securities, then:

(a) If the Registration is undertaken for the Company's account, the Company shall include in any such Registration (A) first, the Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Registrable Securities of Holders exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1 hereof, Pro Rata, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), the Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been requested pursuant to written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities;

(b) If the Registration is pursuant to a request by persons or entities other than the Holders of Registrable Securities, then the Company shall include in any such Registration (A) first, the Common Stock or other equity securities, if any, of such requesting persons or entities, other than the Holders of Registrable Securities, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Registrable Securities of Holders exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1, Pro Rata, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), the Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (D) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A), (B) and (C), the Common Stock or other equity securities for the account of other persons or entities that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with such persons or entities, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities.

2.2.3 Piggyback Registration Withdrawal. Any Holder of Registrable Securities shall have the right to withdraw from a Piggyback Registration for any or no reason whatsoever upon written notification to the Company and the Underwriter or Underwriters (if any) of his, her or its intention to withdraw from such Piggyback Registration prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to such Piggyback Registration (or in the case of an Underwritten Registration pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, at least two business days prior to the time of pricing of the applicable offering). The Company (whether on its own good faith determination or as the result of a request for withdrawal by persons pursuant to separate written contractual obligations) may withdraw a Registration Statement filed with the Commission in connection with a Piggyback Registration at any time prior to the effectiveness of such Registration Statement. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Company shall be responsible for the Registration Expenses incurred in connection with the Piggyback Registration prior to its withdrawal under this subsection 2.2.3.

2.2.4 Unlimited Piggyback Registration Rights. For purposes of clarity, any Registration effected pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof shall not be counted as a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration effected under Section 2.1 hereof.

2.3 Shelf Registrations. The Holders of Registrable Securities may at any time, and from time to time, request in writing that the Company, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission), register the resale of any or all of their Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or any similar short form registration statement that may be available at such time ("**Form S-3**"), or if the Company is ineligible to use Form S-3, on Form S-1; a registration statement filed pursuant to this Section 2.3 (a "**Shelf**") shall provide for the resale of the Registrable Securities included therein pursuant to any method or combination of methods legally available to, and requested by, any Holder. Within three (3) days of the Company's receipt of a written request from a Holder or Holders of Registrable Securities for a Registration on a Shelf, the Company shall promptly give written notice of the proposed Registration to all other Holders of Registrable Securities, and each Holder of Registrable Securities who thereafter wishes to include all or a portion of such Holder's Registrable Securities in such Registration shall so notify the Company, in writing, within three (3) business days after the receipt by the Holder of the notice from the Company. As soon as practicable thereafter, but not more than ten (10) days after the Company's initial receipt of such written request for a Registration on a Shelf, the Company shall register all or such portion of such Holder's Registrable Securities as are specified in such written request, together with all or such portion of Registrable Securities of any other Holder or Holders joining in such request as are specified in the written notification given by such Holder or Holders; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to effect any such Registration pursuant to this Section 2.3 if the Holders of Registrable Securities, together with the Holders of any other equity securities of the Company entitled to inclusion in such Registration, propose to sell the Registrable Securities and such other equity securities (if any) at any aggregate price to the public of less than \$5,000,000. The Company shall maintain each Shelf in accordance with the terms hereof, and shall prepare and file with the Commission such amendments, including post-effective amendments, and supplements as may be necessary to keep such Shelf continuously effective, available for use and in compliance with the provisions of the Securities Act until such time as there are no longer any Registrable Securities included on such Shelf. In the event the Company files a Shelf on Form S-1, the Company shall use its commercially reasonable efforts to convert the Form S-1 to a Form S-3 as soon as practicable after the Company is eligible to use Form S-3.

2.4 Restrictions on Registration Rights. If (A) during the period starting with the date sixty (60) days prior to the Company's good faith estimate of the date of the filing of, and ending on a date one hundred and twenty (120) days after the effective date of, a Company initiated Registration and provided that the Company has delivered written notice to the Holders prior to receipt of a Demand Registration pursuant to subsection 2.1.1 and it continues to actively employ, in good faith, all reasonable efforts to cause the applicable Registration Statement to become effective; (B) the Holders have requested an Underwritten Registration and the Company and the Holders are unable to obtain the commitment of underwriters to firmly underwrite the offer; or (C) in the good faith judgment of the Board such Registration would be seriously detrimental to the Company and the Board concludes as a result that it is essential to defer the filing of such Registration Statement at such time, then in each case the Company shall furnish to such Holders a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board stating that in the good faith judgment of the Board it would be seriously detrimental to the Company for such Registration Statement to be filed in the near future and that it is therefore essential to defer the filing of such Registration Statement. In such event, the Company shall have the right to defer such filing for a period of not more than thirty (30) days; provided, however, that the Company shall not defer its obligation in this manner more than once in any 12-month period. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Agreement, no Registration shall be effected or permitted and no Registration Statement shall become effective, with respect to any Registrable Securities held by any Holder, until after the expiration of the Founder Shares Lock-Up Period or the Private Placement Lock-Up Period, as the case may be.

**ARTICLE III  
COMPANY PROCEDURES**

3.1 General Procedures. If at any time on or after the date the Company consummates a Business Combination the Company is required to effect the Registration of Registrable Securities, the Company shall use its best efforts to effect such Registration to permit the sale of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended plan of distribution thereof, and pursuant thereto the Company shall, as expeditiously as possible:

3.1.1 prepare and file with the Commission as soon as practicable a Registration Statement with respect to such Registrable Securities and use its reasonable best efforts to cause such Registration Statement to become effective and remain effective until all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement have been sold;

3.1.2 prepare and file with the Commission such amendments and post-effective amendments to the Registration Statement, and such supplements to the Prospectus, as may be reasonably requested by the majority-in-interest of the Holders or any Underwriter of Registrable Securities or as may be required by the rules, regulations or instructions applicable to the registration form used by the Company or by the Securities Act or rules and regulations thereunder to keep the Registration Statement effective until all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement are sold in accordance with the intended plan of distribution set forth in such Registration Statement or supplement to the Prospectus;

3.1.3 prior to filing a Registration Statement or Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, furnish without charge to the Underwriters, if any, and the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration, and such Holders' legal counsel, copies of such Registration Statement as proposed to be filed, each amendment and supplement to such Registration Statement (in each case including all exhibits thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein), the Prospectus included in such Registration Statement (including each preliminary Prospectus), and such other documents as the Underwriters and the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration or the legal counsel for any such Holders may request in order to facilitate the disposition of the Registrable Securities owned by such Holders;

3.1.4 prior to any public offering of Registrable Securities, use its best efforts to (i) register or qualify the Registrable Securities covered by the Registration Statement under such securities or "blue sky" laws of such jurisdictions in the United States as the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement (in light of their intended plan of distribution) may request and (ii) take such action necessary to cause such Registrable Securities covered by the Registration Statement to be registered with or approved by such other governmental authorities as may be necessary by virtue of the business and operations of the Company and do any and all other acts and things that may be necessary or advisable to enable the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement to consummate the disposition of such Registrable Securities in such jurisdictions; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to qualify generally to do business in any jurisdiction where it would not otherwise be required to qualify or take any action to which it would be subject to general service of process or taxation in any such jurisdiction where it is not then otherwise so subject;

3.1.5 cause all such Registrable Securities to be listed on each securities exchange or automated quotation system on which similar securities issued by the Company are then listed;

3.1.6 provide a transfer agent or warrant agent, as applicable, and registrar for all such Registrable Securities no later than the effective date of such Registration Statement;

3.1.7 advise each seller of such Registrable Securities, promptly after it shall receive notice or obtain knowledge thereof, of the issuance of any stop order by the Commission suspending the effectiveness of such Registration Statement or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose and promptly use its reasonable best efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such stop order should be issued;

3.1.8 at least five (5) days prior to the filing of any Registration Statement or Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to such Registration Statement or Prospectus or any document that is to be incorporated by reference into such Registration Statement or Prospectus, furnish a copy thereof to each seller of such Registrable Securities or its counsel;

3.1.9 notify the Holders at any time when a Prospectus relating to such Registration Statement is required to be delivered under the Securities Act, of the happening of any event as a result of which the Prospectus included in such Registration Statement, as then in effect, includes a Misstatement, and then to correct such Misstatement as set forth in Section 3.4 hereof;

3.1.10 permit a representative of the Holders, the Underwriters, if any, and any attorney or accountant retained by such Holders or Underwriter to participate, at each such person's own expense, in the preparation of the Registration Statement, and cause the Company's officers, directors and employees to supply all information reasonably requested by any such representative, Underwriter, attorney or accountant in connection with the Registration; provided, however, that such representatives or Underwriters enter into a confidentiality agreement, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Company, prior to the release or disclosure of any such information;

3.1.11 obtain a "cold comfort" letter from the Company's independent registered public accountants in the event of an Underwritten Registration, in customary form and covering such matters of the type customarily covered by "cold comfort" letters as the managing Underwriter may reasonably request, and reasonably satisfactory to a majority-in-interest of the participating Holders;

3.1.12 on the date the Registrable Securities are delivered for sale pursuant to such Registration, obtain an opinion, dated such date, of counsel representing the Company for the purposes of such Registration, addressed to the Holders, the placement agent or sales agent, if any, and the Underwriters, if any, covering such legal matters with respect to the Registration in respect of which such opinion is being given as the Holders, placement agent, sales agent, or Underwriter may reasonably request and as are customarily included in such opinions and negative assurance letters, and reasonably satisfactory to a majority in interest of the participating Holders;

3.1.13 in the event of any Underwritten Offering, enter into and perform its obligations under an underwriting agreement, in usual and customary form, with the managing Underwriter of such offering;

3.1.14 make available to its security holders, as soon as reasonably practicable, an earnings statement covering the period of at least twelve (12) months beginning with the first day of the Company's first full calendar quarter after the effective date of the Registration Statement which satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) of the Securities Act and Rule 158 thereunder (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission);

3.1.15 if the Registration involves the Registration of Registrable Securities involving gross proceeds in excess of \$25,000,000, use its reasonable efforts to make available senior executives of the Company to participate in customary "road show" presentations that may be reasonably requested by the Underwriter in any Underwritten Offering; and

3.1.16 otherwise, in good faith, cooperate reasonably with, and take such customary actions as may reasonably be requested by the Holders, in connection with such Registration.

3.2 Registration Expenses. The Registration Expenses of all Registrations shall be borne by the Company. It is acknowledged by the Holders that the Holders shall bear all incremental selling expenses relating to the sale of Registrable Securities, such as Underwriters' commissions and discounts, brokerage fees, Underwriter marketing costs and, other than as set forth in the definition of "**Registration Expenses**," all reasonable fees and expenses of any legal counsel representing the Holders.

3.3 Requirements for Participation in Underwritten Offerings. No person may participate in any Underwritten Offering for equity securities of the Company pursuant to a Registration initiated by the Company hereunder unless such person (i) agrees to sell such person's securities on the basis provided in any underwriting arrangements approved by the Company and (ii) completes and executes all customary questionnaires, powers of attorney, indemnities, lock-up agreements, underwriting agreements and other customary documents as may be reasonably required under the terms of such underwriting arrangements.

3.4 Suspension of Sales; Adverse Disclosure. Upon receipt of written notice from the Company that a Registration Statement or Prospectus contains a Misstatement, each of the Holders shall forthwith discontinue disposition of Registrable Securities until he, she or it has received copies of a supplemented or amended Prospectus correcting the Misstatement (it being understood that the Company hereby covenants to prepare and file such supplement or amendment as soon as practicable after the time of such notice), or until he, she or it is advised in writing by the Company that the use of the Prospectus may be resumed. If the filing, initial effectiveness or continued use of a Registration Statement in respect of any Registration at any time would require the Company to make an Adverse Disclosure or would require the inclusion in such Registration Statement of financial statements that are unavailable to the Company for reasons beyond the Company's control, the Company may, upon giving prompt written notice of such action to the Holders, delay the filing or initial effectiveness of, or suspend use of, such Registration Statement for the shortest period of time, but in no event more than ninety (90) days in any 12-month period, determined in good faith by the Company to be necessary for such purpose. In the event the Company exercises its rights under the preceding sentence, the Holders agree to suspend, immediately upon their receipt of the notice referred to above, their use of the Prospectus relating to any Registration in connection with any sale or offer to sell Registrable Securities. The Company shall immediately notify the Holders of the expiration of any period during which it exercised its rights under this Section 3.4.

3.5 Reporting Obligations. As long as any Holder shall own Registrable Securities, the Company, at all times while it shall be a reporting company under the Exchange Act, covenants to file timely (or obtain extensions in respect thereof and file within the applicable grace period) all reports required to be filed by the Company after the date hereof pursuant to Sections 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act and to promptly furnish the Holders with true and complete copies of all such filings. The Company further covenants that it shall take such further action as any Holder may reasonably request, all to the extent required from time to time to enable such Holder to sell shares of the Common Stock held by such Holder without registration under the Securities Act within the limitation of the exemptions provided by Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission), including providing any legal opinions, to the extent such exemption is available to Holders at such time. Upon the request of any Holder, the Company shall deliver to such Holder a written certification of a duly authorized officer as to whether it has complied with such requirements.

#### ARTICLE IV INDEMNIFICATION AND CONTRIBUTION

##### 4.1 Indemnification.

4.1.1 The Company agrees to indemnify, to the extent permitted by law, each Holder of Registrable Securities, its officers and directors and each person who controls such Holder (within the meaning of the Securities Act) against all losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including attorneys' fees) caused by any untrue or alleged untrue statement of material fact contained in any Registration Statement, Prospectus or preliminary Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto or any omission or alleged omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, except insofar as the same are caused by or contained in any information furnished in writing to the Company by such Holder expressly for use therein. The Company shall indemnify the Underwriters, their officers and directors and each person who controls such Underwriters (within the meaning of the Securities Act) to the same extent as provided in the foregoing with respect to the indemnification of the Holder.

4.1.2 In connection with any Registration Statement in which a Holder of Registrable Securities is participating, such Holder shall furnish to the Company in writing such information and affidavits as the Company reasonably requests for use in connection with any such Registration Statement or Prospectus and, to the extent permitted by law, shall indemnify the Company, its directors and officers and agents and each person who controls the Company (within the meaning of the Securities Act) against any losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including without limitation reasonable attorneys' fees) resulting from any untrue statement of material fact contained in the Registration Statement, Prospectus or preliminary Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto or any omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, but only to the extent that such untrue statement or omission is contained in any information or affidavit so furnished in writing by such Holder expressly for use therein; provided, however, that the obligation to indemnify shall be several, not joint and several, among such Holders of Registrable Securities, and the liability of each such Holder of Registrable Securities shall be in proportion to and limited to the net proceeds received by such Holder from the sale of Registrable Securities pursuant to such Registration Statement. The Holders of Registrable Securities shall indemnify the Underwriters, their officers, directors and each person who controls such Underwriters (within the meaning of the Securities Act) to the same extent as provided in the foregoing with respect to indemnification of the Company.

4.1.3 Any person entitled to indemnification herein shall (i) give prompt written notice to the indemnifying party of any claim with respect to which it seeks indemnification (provided that the failure to give prompt notice shall not impair any person's right to indemnification hereunder to the extent such failure has not materially prejudiced the indemnifying party) and (ii) unless in such indemnified party's reasonable judgment a conflict of interest between such indemnified and indemnifying parties may exist with respect to such claim, permit such indemnifying party to assume the defense of such claim with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party. If such defense is assumed, the indemnifying party shall not be subject to any liability for any settlement made by the indemnified party without its consent (but such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld). An indemnifying party who is not entitled to, or elects not to, assume the defense of a claim shall not be obligated to pay the fees and expenses of more than one counsel for all parties indemnified by such indemnifying party with respect to such claim, unless in the reasonable judgment of any indemnified party a conflict of interest may exist between such indemnified party and any other of such indemnified parties with respect to such claim. No indemnifying party shall, without the consent of the indemnified party, consent to the entry of any judgment or enter into any settlement which cannot be settled in all respects by the payment of money (and such money is so paid by the indemnifying party pursuant to the terms of such settlement) or which settlement does not include as an unconditional term thereof the giving by the claimant or plaintiff to such indemnified party of a release from all liability in respect to such claim or litigation.

4.1.4 The indemnification provided for under this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of the indemnified party or any officer, director or controlling person of such indemnified party and shall survive the transfer of securities. The Company and each Holder of Registrable Securities participating in an offering also agrees to make such provisions as are reasonably requested by any indemnified party for contribution to such party in the event the Company's or such Holder's indemnification is unavailable for any reason.

4.1.5 If the indemnification provided under Section 4.1 hereof from the indemnifying party is unavailable or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party in respect of any losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses referred to herein, then the indemnifying party, in lieu of indemnifying the indemnified party, shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by the indemnified party as a result of such losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the indemnifying party and the indemnified party, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative fault of the indemnifying party and indemnified party shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether any action in question, including any untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact, was made by, or relates to information supplied by, such indemnifying party or indemnified party, and the indemnifying party's and indemnified party's relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such action; provided, however, that the liability of any Holder under this subsection 4.1.5 shall be limited to the amount of the net proceeds received by such Holder in such offering giving rise to such liability. The amount paid or payable by a party as a result of the losses or other liabilities referred to above shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth in subsections 4.1.1, 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 above, any legal or other fees, charges or expenses reasonably incurred by such party in connection with any investigation or proceeding. The parties hereto agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this subsection 4.1.5 were determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation, which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in this subsection 4.1.5. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution pursuant to this subsection 4.1.5 from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.

**ARTICLE V**  
**MISCELLANEOUS**

5.1 Notices. Any notice or communication under this Agreement must be in writing and given by (i) deposit in the United States mail, addressed to the party to be notified, postage prepaid and registered or certified with return receipt requested, (ii) delivery in person or by courier service providing evidence of delivery, or (iii) transmission by hand delivery, electronic mail, telecopy, telegram or facsimile. Each notice or communication that is mailed, delivered, or transmitted in the manner described above shall be deemed sufficiently given, served, sent, and received, in the case of mailed notices, on the third business day following the date on which it is mailed and, in the case of notices delivered by courier service, hand delivery, electronic mail, telecopy, telegram or facsimile, at such time as it is delivered to the addressee (with the delivery receipt or the affidavit of messenger) or at such time as delivery is refused by the addressee upon presentation. Any notice or communication under this Agreement must be addressed, if to the Company, to: 311 South Wacker Drive, Suite 6400, Chicago, Illinois 60606, Attn: Peter Gruszka, with copy to: Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough, LLP, 101 Constitution Ave, NW, Suite 900, Washington, DC 20001, Attn: Jonathan H. Talcott; and, if to any Holder, at such Holder's address or facsimile number as set forth in the Company's books and records. Any party may change its address for notice at any time and from time to time by written notice to the other parties hereto, and such change of address shall become effective thirty (30) days after delivery of such notice as provided in this Section 5.1.

5.2 Assignment; No Third Party Beneficiaries.

5.2.1 This Agreement and the rights, duties and obligations of the Company hereunder may not be assigned or delegated by the Company in whole or in part.

5.2.2 Prior to the expiration of the Founder Shares Lock-Up Period or the Private Placement Lock-Up Period, as the case may be, no Holder may assign or delegate such Holder's rights, duties or obligations under this Agreement, in whole or in part, except in connection with a transfer of Registrable Securities by such Holder to a Permitted Transferee, but only if such Permitted Transferee agrees to become bound by the transfer restrictions set forth in this Agreement and other applicable agreements.

5.2.3 This Agreement and the provisions hereof shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of each of the parties and its successors and the permitted assigns of the Holders, which shall include Permitted Transferees.

5.2.4 This Agreement shall not confer any rights or benefits on any persons that are not parties hereto, other than as expressly set forth in this Agreement and Section 5.2 hereof.

5.2.5 No assignment by any party hereto of such party's rights, duties and obligations hereunder shall be binding upon or obligate the Company unless and until the Company shall have received (i) written notice of such assignment as provided in Section 5.1 hereof and (ii) the written agreement of the assignee, in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Company, to be bound by the terms and provisions of this Agreement (which may be accomplished by an addendum or certificate of joinder to this Agreement). Any transfer or assignment made other than as provided in this Section 5.2 shall be null and void.

5.3 Severability. This Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible that is valid and enforceable.

5.4 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in multiple counterparts (including facsimile or PDF counterparts), each of which shall be deemed an original, and all of which together shall constitute the same instrument, but only one of which need be produced.

5.5 Entire Agreement. This Agreement (including all agreements entered into pursuant hereto and all certificates and instruments delivered pursuant hereto and thereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersede all prior and contemporaneous agreements, representations, understandings, negotiations and discussions between the parties, whether oral or written.



5.6 Governing Law; Venue. NOTWITHSTANDING THE PLACE WHERE THIS AGREEMENT MAY BE EXECUTED BY ANY OF THE PARTIES HERETO, THE PARTIES EXPRESSLY AGREE THAT (I) THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK AS APPLIED TO AGREEMENTS AMONG NEW YORK RESIDENTS ENTERED INTO AND TO BE PERFORMED ENTIRELY WITHIN NEW YORK, WITHOUT REGARD TO THE CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS OF SUCH JURISDICTION AND (II) THE VENUE FOR ANY ACTION TAKEN WITH RESPECT TO THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE ANY STATE OR FEDERAL COURT IN NEW YORK COUNTY IN THE STATE OF NEW YORK.

5.7 Waiver of Trial by Jury. Each party hereby irrevocably and unconditionally waives the right to a trial by jury in any action, suit, counterclaim or other proceeding (whether based on contract, tort or otherwise) arising out of, connected with or relating to this Agreement, the transactions contemplated hereby, or the actions of the Sponsor in the negotiation, administration, performance or enforcement hereof.

5.8 Amendments and Modifications. Upon the written consent of the Company and the Holders of at least a majority in interest of the Registrable Securities at the time in question, compliance with any of the provisions, covenants and conditions set forth in this Agreement may be waived, or any of such provisions, covenants or conditions may be amended or modified; provided, however, that notwithstanding the foregoing, any amendment hereto or waiver hereof that adversely affects one Holder, solely in his, her or its capacity as a holder of the shares of capital stock of the Company, in a manner that is materially different from the other Holders (in such capacity) shall require the consent of the Holder so affected. No course of dealing between any Holder or the Company and any other party hereto or any failure or delay on the part of a Holder or the Company in exercising any rights or remedies under this Agreement shall operate as a waiver of any rights or remedies of any Holder or the Company. No single or partial exercise of any rights or remedies under this Agreement by a party shall operate as a waiver or preclude the exercise of any other rights or remedies hereunder or thereunder by such party.

5.9 Titles and Headings. Titles and headings of sections of this Agreement are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction of any provision of this Agreement.

5.10 Remedies Cumulative. In the event that the Company fails to observe or perform any covenant or agreement to be observed or performed under this Agreement, the Holders may proceed to protect and enforce its rights by suit in equity or action at law, whether for specific performance of any term contained in this Agreement or for an injunction against the breach of any such term or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Agreement or to enforce any other legal or equitable right, or to take any one or more of such actions, without being required to post a bond. None of the rights, powers or remedies conferred under this Agreement shall be mutually exclusive, and each such right, power or remedy shall be cumulative and in addition to any other right, power or remedy, whether conferred by this Agreement or now or hereafter available at law, in equity, by statute or otherwise.

5.11 Other Registration Rights. The Company represents and warrants that no person, other than a Holder of Registrable Securities, has any right to require the Company to register any securities of the Company for sale or to include such securities of the Company in any Registration Statement filed by the Company for the sale of securities for its own account or for the account of any other person. Further, the Company represents and warrants that this Agreement supersedes any other registration rights agreement or agreement with similar terms and conditions and in the event of a conflict between any such agreement or agreements and this Agreement, the terms of this Agreement shall prevail.

5.12 Term. This Agreement shall terminate with respect to any Holder on the date that such Holder no longer holds any Registrable Securities. The provisions of Section 3.5 and Article IV shall survive any termination.

5.13 Holder Information. Each Holder agrees, if requested in writing, to represent to the Company the total number of Registrable Securities held by such Holder in order for the Company to make determinations hereunder.

[SIGNATURE PAGES FOLLOW]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Agreement to be executed as of the date first written above.

**COMPANY:**

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION,**  
a Delaware corporation

By: /s/ Theodore L. Koenig  
Name: Theodore L. Koenig  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

**HOLDERS:**

**MCAP ACQUISITION, LLC,**  
a Delaware limited liability company

**By: Monroe Capital Management Advisors, LLC, its manager**

By: /s/ Peter Gruszka  
Name: Peter Gruszka  
Title: General Counsel and Managing Director

**HOLDERS:**

/s/ Thomas J. Allison  
**Thomas J. Allison**

/s/ John C. Chrystal  
**John C. Chrystal**

/s/ Roger Schoenfeld  
**Roger Schoenfeld**

[Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**PRIVATE PLACEMENT WARRANTS PURCHASE AGREEMENT**

THIS PRIVATE PLACEMENT WARRANTS PURCHASE AGREEMENT, dated as of February 25, 2021 (as it may from time to time be amended, this “**Agreement**”), is entered into by and between MCAP Acquisition Corporation, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and MCAP Acquisition, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Purchaser**”).

WHEREAS, the Company intends to consummate an initial public offering of the Company’s units (the “**Public Offering**”), each unit consisting of one share of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), and one-third of one redeemable warrant as set forth in the Company’s registration statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-252607) (the “**Registration Statement**”), filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”), under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”). Each whole warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share. The Purchaser has agreed to purchase an aggregate of 5,433,333 warrants (or up to 5,983,333 warrants if the over-allotment option in connection with the Public Offering is exercised in full) (the “**Private Placement Warrants**”), each whole Private Placement Warrant entitling the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual promises contained in this Agreement and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties to this Agreement hereby, intending legally to be bound, agree as follows:

**AGREEMENT****Section 1. Authorization, Purchase and Sale; Terms of the Private Placement Warrants.**

- A. Authorization of the Private Placement Warrants. The Company has duly authorized the issuance and sale of the Private Placement Warrants to the Purchaser.
- B. Purchase and Sale of the Private Placement Warrants.
- (i) On the date that is one (1) business day prior to the date of the consummation of the Public Offering or on such earlier time and date as may be mutually agreed by the Purchaser and the Company (the “**Initial Closing Date**”), the Company shall issue and sell to the Purchaser, and the Purchaser shall purchase from the Company, 5,433,333 Private Placement Warrants at a price of \$1.50 per warrant for an aggregate purchase price of \$8,150,000 (the “**Purchase Price**”). The Purchaser shall pay the Purchase Price by wire transfer of immediately available funds in accordance with the Company’s wiring instructions. On the Initial Closing Date, upon the payment by the Purchaser of the Purchase Price, the Company shall, at its option, deliver a certificate evidencing the Private Placement Warrants purchased on such date duly registered in the Purchaser’s name to the Purchaser, or effect such delivery in book-entry form.
- (ii) On the date that is one (1) business day prior to the date of the consummation of the closing of the over-allotment option in connection with the Public Offering or on such earlier time and date as may be mutually agreed by the Purchaser and the Company (each such date, an “**Over-allotment Closing Date**,” and each Over-allotment Closing Date (if any) and the Initial Closing Date being sometimes referred to herein as a “**Closing Date**”), the Company shall issue and sell to the Purchaser, and the Purchaser shall purchase from the Company, up to 550,000 Private Placement Warrants, in the same proportion as the amount of the over-allotment option that is exercised, at a price of \$1.50 per warrant for an aggregate purchase price of up to \$825,000 (if the over-allotment option in connection with the Public Offering is exercised in full) (the “**Over-allotment Purchase Price**”). The Purchaser shall pay the Over-allotment Purchase Price by wire transfer of immediately available funds in accordance with the Company’s wiring instructions. On the Over-allotment Closing Date, upon the payment by the Purchaser of the Over-allotment Purchase Price, the Company shall, at its option, deliver a certificate evidencing the Private Placement Warrants purchased on such date duly registered in the Purchaser’s name to the Purchaser, or effect such delivery in book-entry form.
-

C. Terms of the Private Placement Warrants.

- (i) Each Private Placement Warrant shall have the terms set forth in a Warrant Agreement to be entered into by the Company and a warrant agent, in connection with the Public Offering (the “**Warrant Agreement**”).
- (ii) At the time of the closing of the Public Offering, the Company and the Purchaser shall enter into a registration rights agreement (the “**Registration Rights Agreement**”) pursuant to which the Company will grant certain registration rights to the Purchaser relating to the Private Placement Warrants and the shares of Common Stock underlying the Private Placement Warrants.

**Section 2. Representations and Warranties of the Company.** As a material inducement to the Purchaser to enter into this Agreement and purchase the Private Placement Warrants, the Company hereby represents and warrants to the Purchaser (which representations and warranties shall survive each Closing Date) that:

- A. Organization and Corporate Power. The Company is a corporation duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and is qualified to do business in every jurisdiction in which the failure to so qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the financial condition, operating results or assets of the Company. The Company possesses all requisite corporate power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Warrant Agreement.
- B. Authorization; No Breach.
  - (i) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the Private Placement Warrants have been duly authorized by the Company as of the Closing Date. This Agreement constitutes the valid and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors’ rights and to general equitable principles (whether considered in a proceeding in equity or law). Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms of the Warrant Agreement and this Agreement, the Private Placement Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms as of the Closing Date, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors’ rights and to general equitable principles (whether considered in a proceeding in equity or law).

- (ii) The execution and delivery by the Company of this Agreement and the Private Placement Warrants, the issuance and sale of the Private Placement Warrants, the issuance of the shares of Common Stock upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants and the fulfillment of and compliance with the respective terms hereof and thereof by the Company, do not and will not as of the Closing Date (a) conflict with or result in a breach of the terms, conditions or provisions of, (b) constitute a default under, (c) result in the creation of any lien, security interest, charge or encumbrance upon the Company's capital stock or assets under, (d) result in a violation of, or (e) require any authorization, consent, approval, exemption or other action by or notice or declaration to, or filing with, any court or administrative or governmental body or agency pursuant to the Certificate of Incorporation of the Company or the Bylaws of the Company, or any material law, statute, rule or regulation to which the Company is subject, or any agreement, order, judgment or decree to which the Company is subject, except for any filings required after the date hereof under federal or state securities laws.
- C. Title to Securities. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof and the Warrant Agreement, the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof and the Warrant Agreement, the Purchaser will have good title to the Private Placement Warrants and the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of such Private Placement Warrants, free and clear of all liens, claims and encumbrances of any kind, other than (i) transfer restrictions hereunder and under the other agreements contemplated hereby, (ii) transfer restrictions under federal and state securities laws, and (iii) liens, claims or encumbrances imposed due to the actions of the Purchaser.
- D. Governmental Consents. No permit, consent, approval or authorization of, or declaration to or filing with, any governmental authority is required in connection with the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement or the consummation by the Company of any other transactions contemplated hereby.
- E. Regulation D Qualification. Neither the Company nor, to its knowledge, any of its affiliates, directors or beneficial stockholders of 20% or more of its outstanding securities, has experienced a disqualifying event as enumerated pursuant to Rule 506(d) of Regulation D under the Securities Act.

**Section 3. Representations and Warranties of the Purchaser.** As a material inducement to the Company to enter into this Agreement and issue and sell the Private Placement Warrants to the Purchaser, the Purchaser hereby represents and warrants to the Company (which representations and warranties shall survive each Closing Date) that:

- A. Organization and Requisite Authority. The Purchaser possesses all requisite power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.
- B. Authorization; No Breach.
- (i) This Agreement constitutes a valid and binding obligation of the Purchaser, enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general applicability relating to or affecting creditors' rights and to general equitable principles (whether considered in a proceeding in equity or law).
- (ii) The execution and delivery by the Purchaser of this Agreement and the fulfillment of and compliance with the terms hereof by the Purchaser does not and shall not as of each Closing Date conflict with or result in a breach by the Purchaser of the terms, conditions or provisions of any agreement, instrument, order, judgment or decree to which the Purchaser is subject.
- C. Investment Representations.
- (i) The Purchaser is acquiring the Private Placement Warrants and, upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants, the shares of Common Stock issuable upon such exercise (collectively, the "**Securities**"), for the Purchaser's own account, for investment purposes only and not with a view towards, or for resale in connection with, any public sale or distribution thereof.
- (ii) The Purchaser is an "accredited investor" as such term is defined in Rule 501(a)(3) of Regulation D under the Securities Act.
- (iii) The Purchaser understands that the Securities are being offered and will be sold to it in reliance on specific exemptions from the registration requirements of the United States federal and state securities laws and that the Company is relying upon the truth and accuracy of, and the Purchaser's compliance with, the representations and warranties of the Purchaser set forth herein in order to determine the availability of such exemptions and the eligibility of the Purchaser to acquire such Securities.
- (iv) The Purchaser did not decide to enter into this Agreement as a result of any general solicitation or general advertising within the meaning of Rule 502(c) under the Securities Act.
- (v) The Purchaser has been furnished with all materials relating to the business, finances and operations of the Company and materials relating to the offer and sale of the Securities which have been requested by the Purchaser. The Purchaser has been afforded the opportunity to ask questions of the executive officers and directors of the Company. The Purchaser understands that its investment in the Securities involves a high degree of risk and it has sought such accounting, legal and tax advice as it has considered necessary to make an informed investment decision with respect to the acquisition of the Securities.

- (vi) The Purchaser understands that no United States federal or state agency or any other government or governmental agency has passed on or made any recommendation or endorsement of the Securities or the fairness or suitability of the investment in the Securities by the Purchaser nor have such authorities passed upon or endorsed the merits of the offering of the Securities.
- (vii) The Purchaser understands that: (a) the Securities have not been and are not being registered under the Securities Act or any state securities laws, and may not be offered for sale, sold, assigned or transferred unless (1) subsequently registered thereunder or (2) sold in reliance on an exemption therefrom; (b) except as specifically set forth in the Registration Rights Agreement, neither the Company nor any other person is under any obligation to register the Securities under the Securities Act or any state securities laws or to comply with the terms and conditions of any exemption thereunder; and (c) Rule 144 adopted pursuant to the Securities Act will not be available for resale transactions of Securities prior to a Business Combination and may not be available for resale transactions of Securities after a Business Combination.
- (viii) The Purchaser has such knowledge and experience in financial and business matters, knows of the high degree of risk associated with investments in the securities of companies in the development stage such as the Company, is capable of evaluating the merits and risks of an investment in the Securities and is able to bear the economic risk of an investment in the Securities in the amount contemplated hereunder for an indefinite period of time. The Purchaser has adequate means of providing for its current financial needs and contingencies and will have no current or anticipated future needs for liquidity which would be jeopardized by the investment in the Securities. The Purchaser can afford a complete loss of its investment in the Securities.

**Section 4. Conditions of the Purchaser's Obligations.** The obligations of the Purchaser to purchase and pay for the Private Placement Warrants are subject to the fulfillment, on or before each Closing Date, of each of the following conditions:

- A. Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties of the Company contained in Section 2 shall be true and correct at and as of such Closing Date as though then made.
- B. Performance. The Company shall have performed and complied with all agreements, obligations and conditions contained in this Agreement that are required to be performed or complied with by it on or before such Closing Date.

- C. No Injunction. No litigation, statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by or in any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction or any self-regulatory organization having authority over the matters contemplated hereby, which prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Warrant Agreement.
- D. Warrant Agreement. The Company shall have entered into a Warrant Agreement with a warrant agent on terms satisfactory to the Purchaser.

**Section 5. Conditions of the Company's Obligations.** The obligations of the Company to the Purchaser under this Agreement are subject to the fulfillment, on or before each Closing Date, of each of the following conditions:

- A. Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties of the Purchaser contained in Section 3 shall be true and correct at and as of such Closing Date as though then made.
- B. Performance. The Purchaser shall have performed and complied with all agreements, obligations and conditions contained in this Agreement that are required to be performed or complied with by the Purchaser on or before such Closing Date.
- C. Corporate Consents. The Company shall have obtained the consent of its Board of Directors authorizing the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the Warrant Agreement and the issuance and sale of the Private Placement Warrants hereunder.
- D. No Injunction. No litigation, statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by or in any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction or any self-regulatory organization having authority over the matters contemplated hereby, which prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Warrant Agreement.
- E. Warrant Agreement. The Company shall have entered into a Warrant Agreement with a warrant agent on terms satisfactory to the Company.

**Section 6. Termination.** This Agreement may be terminated at any time after March 12, 2021 upon the election by either the Company or the Purchaser upon written notice to the other party if the closing of the Public Offering does not occur prior to such date.

**Section 7. Survival of Representations and Warranties.** All of the representations and warranties contained herein shall survive each Closing Date.

**Section 8. Definitions.** Terms used but not otherwise defined in this Agreement shall have the meaning assigned to such terms in the Registration Statement.



**Section 9. Miscellaneous.**

- A. Successors and Assigns. Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, all covenants and agreements contained in this Agreement by or on behalf of any of the parties hereto shall bind and inure to the benefit of the respective successors of the parties hereto whether so expressed or not. Notwithstanding the foregoing or anything to the contrary herein, the parties may not assign this Agreement, other than assignments by the Purchaser to affiliates thereof (including, without limitation, one or more of its members).
- B. Severability. Whenever possible, each provision of this Agreement shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Agreement is held to be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective only to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of this Agreement.
- C. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed simultaneously in two or more counterparts, none of which need contain the signatures of more than one party, but all such counterparts taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement. In the event that any signature is delivered by facsimile transmission or by e-mail delivery of a “pdf” format data file, such signature shall create a valid and binding obligation of the party executing (or on whose behalf such signature is executed) with the same force and effect as if such facsimile or “.pdf” signature page were an original thereof.
- D. Descriptive Headings; Interpretation. The descriptive headings of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and do not constitute a substantive part of this Agreement. The use of the word “including” in this Agreement shall be by way of example rather than by limitation.
- E. Governing Law. This Agreement shall be deemed to be a contract made under the laws of the State of New York and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.
- F. Amendments. This Agreement may not be amended, modified or waived as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by all parties hereto.

[Signature Page Follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement to be effective as of the date first set forth above.

**COMPANY:**

**MCAP ACQUISITION CORPORATION**

By: /s/ Theodore L. Koenig \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Theodore L. Koenig

Title: Chief Executive Officer

**PURCHASER:**

**MCAP ACQUISITION, LLC**

**By: Monroe Capital Management Advisors, LLC, its manager**

By: /s/ Peter Gruszka \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Peter Gruszka

Title: General Counsel and Managing Director

*[Signature Page to Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement]*

---

**MCAP Acquisition Corporation Announces Pricing of Upsized \$275 Million Initial Public Offering**

CHICAGO--(BUSINESS WIRE)--MCAP Acquisition Corporation (“the Company” or “MCAP”), a special purpose acquisition company sponsored by an affiliate of Monroe Capital LLC, today announced the pricing of its initial public offering of 27,500,000 units at a price of \$10.00 per unit. Each unit consists of one share of Class A common stock and one-third of one redeemable warrant. Each whole warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Class A common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. The Company’s units are expected to be listed on the Nasdaq Stock Market and trade under the symbol “MACQU” beginning February 26, 2021. Once the securities comprising the units begin separate trading, the Company expects that its Class A common stock and warrants will be listed on the Nasdaq Stock Market and trade under the symbols “MACQ” and “MACQW,” respectively. The offering is expected to close on March 2, 2021, subject to customary closing conditions.

MCAP is a newly organized blank check company formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses. The Company’s sponsor, MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the “Sponsor”), is managed by an affiliate of Monroe Capital LLC.

MCAP may pursue an initial business combination target in any business, industry or sector, but it intends to capitalize on the differentiated ability of the Sponsor’s manager to source, acquire and manage software, technology-enabled, and business services companies.

The Company is led by CEO and Chairman Theodore Koenig, who is President and CEO of Monroe Capital and the CEO and Chairman of Monroe Capital Corporation (Nasdaq: MRCC). He is joined by Co-President Zia Uddin, who is a Partner at Monroe Capital; Co-President Mark Solovy, who serves as a Managing Director and Co-Head of the Technology Finance Group at Monroe Capital; and CFO Scott Marienau, who is the CFO of Monroe Capital’s management company.

Cowen is serving as the sole book-running underwriter for the offering. The Company has granted the underwriters a 45-day option from the date of the prospectus to purchase up to an additional 4,125,000 units to cover over-allotments, if any.

The offering is being made only by means of a prospectus. Copies of the prospectus may be obtained, when available, from Cowen, c/o Broadridge Financial Solutions, 1155 Long Island Avenue, Edgewood, NY, 11717, Attn: Prospectus Department, email: [PostSaleManualRequests@broadridge.com](mailto:PostSaleManualRequests@broadridge.com), telephone: 833-297-2926.

A registration statement relating to the securities has been filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) and became effective on February 25, 2021. This press release shall not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of these securities in any state or jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation, or sale would be unlawful prior to registration or qualification under the securities laws of any such state or jurisdiction.

**Forward Looking Statements**

This press release contains statements that constitute “forward-looking statements,” including with respect to the proposed initial public offering and the anticipated use of the net proceeds. No assurance can be given that the offering discussed above will be completed on the terms described, or at all, or that the net proceeds of the offering will be used as indicated. Forward-looking statements are subject to numerous conditions, many of which are beyond the control of the Company, including those set forth in the Risk Factors section of the Company’s registration statement and preliminary prospectus for the Company’s offering filed with the SEC. Copies are available on the SEC’s website, [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). The Company undertakes no obligation to update these statements for revisions or changes after the date of this release, except as required by law.

---

**About MCAP Acquisition Corp.**

MCAP is a newly organized blank check company formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses. The Company's sponsor, MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the "Sponsor"), is managed by an affiliate of Monroe Capital LLC, a boutique asset management firm specializing in private credit markets across various strategies, including direct lending, asset-based lending, specialty finance, opportunistic and structured credit, and equity.

**Contacts**

For more information, please contact:

Theodore L. Koenig

MCAP Acquisition Corporation

312-523-2360

[tkoenig@monroecap.com](mailto:tkoenig@monroecap.com)

Caroline Collins

BackBay Communications

617-963-0065

[caroline.collins@backbaycommunications.com](mailto:caroline.collins@backbaycommunications.com)

---

**MCAP Acquisition Corporation Announces Closing of \$316,250,000 Initial Public Offering**

CHICAGO--(BUSINESS WIRE)--MCAP Acquisition Corporation (“the Company” or “MCAP”), a special purpose acquisition company sponsored by an affiliate of Monroe Capital LLC, today announced the closing of its initial public offering of 31,625,000 units, which included the full exercise of the underwriter’s over-allotment option. The offering was priced at \$10.00 per unit, generating gross proceeds of \$316,250,000. Each unit consists of one share of Class A common stock and one-third of one redeemable warrant. Each whole warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Class A common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. The Company’s units are listed on the Nasdaq Stock Market and trade under the symbol “MACQU.” Once the securities comprising the units begin separate trading, the Company expects that its Class A common stock and warrants will be listed on the Nasdaq Stock Market and trade under the symbols “MACQ” and “MACQW,” respectively.

MCAP is a newly organized blank check company formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses. The Company’s sponsor, MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the “Sponsor”), is managed by an affiliate of Monroe Capital LLC.

MCAP may pursue an initial business combination target in any business, industry or sector, but it intends to capitalize on the differentiated ability of the Sponsor’s manager to source, acquire and manage software, technology-enabled, and business services companies.

The Company is led by CEO and Chairman Theodore Koenig, who is President and CEO of Monroe Capital and the CEO and Chairman of Monroe Capital Corporation (Nasdaq: MRCC). He is joined by Co-President Zia Uddin, who is a Partner at Monroe Capital; Co-President Mark Solovy, who serves as a Managing Director and Co-Head of the Technology Finance Group at Monroe Capital; and CFO Scott Marienau, who is the CFO of Monroe Capital’s management company.

Cowen served as the sole book-running underwriter for the offering.

The offering was made only by means of a prospectus. Copies of the prospectus may be obtained from Cowen, c/o Broadridge Financial Solutions, 1155 Long Island Avenue, Edgewood, NY, 11717, Attn: Prospectus Department, email: [PostSaleManualRequests@broadridge.com](mailto:PostSaleManualRequests@broadridge.com), telephone: 833-297-2926.

Registration statements relating to the securities have been filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) and became effective on February 25, 2021. This press release shall not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of these securities in any state or jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation, or sale would be unlawful prior to registration or qualification under the securities laws of any such state or jurisdiction.

**Forward Looking Statements**

This press release contains statements that constitute “forward-looking statements,” including with respect to the anticipated use of the net proceeds of the public offering. No assurance can be given that the net proceeds of the offering will be used as indicated. Forward-looking statements are subject to numerous conditions, many of which are beyond the control of the Company, including those set forth in the Risk Factors section of the Company’s registration statement and prospectus for the Company’s offering filed with the SEC. Copies are available on the SEC’s website, [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). The Company undertakes no obligation to update these statements for revisions or changes after the date of this release, except as required by law.

---

**About MCAP Acquisition Corp.**

MCAP is a newly organized blank check company formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses. The Company's sponsor, MCAP Acquisition, LLC (the "Sponsor"), is managed by an affiliate of Monroe Capital LLC, a boutique asset management firm specializing in private credit markets across various strategies, including direct lending, asset-based lending, specialty finance, opportunistic and structured credit, and equity.

**Contacts**

For more information, please contact:

Theodore L. Koenig

MCAP Acquisition Corporation

312-523-2360

[tkoenig@monroecap.com](mailto:tkoenig@monroecap.com)

Caroline Collins

BackBay Communications

617-963-0065

[caroline.collins@backbaycommunications.com](mailto:caroline.collins@backbaycommunications.com)

---